

Grammatical Exercises

UPON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

COMPARED WITH

THE ENGLISH:

CONTAINING,

1. A Vocabulary of the French Words most frequently used.
2. An Explanation of the different Parts of Speech, followed by the Declension of Nouns and the Conjugation of all Verbs, regular and irregular; with Exercises upon them.
3. All the Rules of the Syntax
- placed in numerical Order, with instructive and moral Exercises appended to each; together with a recapitulatory Exercise at the End of every Chapter, upon all the Rules contained in it.
4. Free Exercises upon the nine Parts of Speech.

By NICOLAS HAMEL,

AUTHOR OF A FRENCH GRAMMAR, AND SEVERAL OTHER
SCHOOL BOOKS.

A NEW EDITION,

CAREFULLY REVISED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR

LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, BROWN, AND GREEN,
PATERNOSTER-ROW;

AND G. AND W. B. WHITTAKER, AVE-MARIA-LANE

1825.

PREFACE.

SOME apology is deemed necessary by writers of every description on introducing their labours to the public, more especially when they have been preceded by others in the same line. If the following sheets exhibit but little that is useful, or nothing that is new, the author is convinced that apology would be improper, and that he has laboured in vain; but should they be found to smooth the path of instruction, he trusts the same criticism which awarded the meed of praise to his Grammar (under its imperfections) will discriminate the improvements he has made in the means of acquiring the French language.

It does not remain for him to point out the utility of a Book of Exercises; the value of this mode of teaching is already appreciated; he is less inclined to decry his predecessors, for defect is natural to man: yet, if the arrangement be obvious; the style concise and clear; the examples apt; the exercises moral, and appropriate; and the manner of working them easily comprehended; he may presume upon the merit of a few improvements, while he has availed himself of all that was useful in others.

The different Parts of Speech are explained with order and precision; Syntax is fully treated of in a series of short and accurate Rules, with examples, and each is succeeded by a select Exercise, entertaining and instructive. No rule is anticipated; the principles depend successively on each other; and a knowledge of the preceding usually leads to the understanding of those which follow. Care has been taken to render the Exercises *progressively* difficult. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. interspersed through the Syntax underneath many English words, indicate the rule in which they are explained; this kind of reference, which becomes more frequent as we proceed, will, in a short time make

EXPLANATION
OF THE
MARKS AND ABBREVIATIONS
USED IN THIS WORK.

- (m. f. s. pl.)..... Denote that the substantive is masculine, feminine, singular, or plural.
- (ir.).....Marks a verb irregular, of which every tense and person will be found page 59 and following.
- (A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H,) indicate what tenses of the verbs are to be used, whenever it becomes difficult to know them, for which see the note, page 28.
- (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c.).....These figures placed in the French line in the third part have reference to the rules, which show how to express in French the English words under which they are placed.
- The same figures placed at the top of some English words indicate the order of the French words.
- (*).....This star has two significations; when it is placed after an English word, it has reference to some observations made at the bottom of the page; but when it is put under an English word, it denotes that it is not to be expressed in French.
- (✍).....This hand marks the rules which are the most essential, and which are to be learnt by heart.
- (—).....Denotes that the English word is spelt alike in French, or at least the first or the last syllables.
- ().....When several words are included between two parentheses, they must be translated by the only words placed under.

N. B. In the following exercises the substantives are put in the singular, the adjectives in the masculine singular, and the verbs in the present of the infinitive mood, to exercise the learner in putting them in their proper gender, number, tenses and persons, according as the case may require.

The English words in *Italics*, in the exercises of the *Syntax* are those upon which the rule prefixed to each of them must be applied.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE SEVENTH EDITION.

THE corrections made in the two preceding editions of this work having been so much approved by the public, as to cause it to be adopted by a great number of schools and private families, as one of the most useful books of the kind, the editors have thought it their duty, in return for so favourable a reception, to spare no trouble or expence to give it every possible degree of perfection. The person who, in the absence of the author, had been intrusted with its revision for the press, was therefore directed to bestow upon it all the attention he could, in order to render it a classical work. The plan having been generally reckoned the most clear and methodical of the kind, it remained only to omit nothing in the execution. As it had been objected that the first part of the exercises, particularly of those upon the verbs, was not always sufficiently clear for young beginners, it has been greatly enlarged. In former editions, exercises had been given only upon the indicative of regular verbs; in the present some have been added upon the subjunctive and the imperative moods; and the paradigm of each conjugation has been placed immediately before the exercises which relate to it: this new distribution saves the trouble of turning over several leaves, in order to find the verb upon which the exercise is to be written. The irregular verbs which were before only given in a table, where the irregularities of the different persons were not easily discovered, are now conjugated at large, with numerous exercises upon each. But one of the most useful improvements is the indication of the tenses which are to be used, whenever the learner would be likely to find any difficulty in ascertaining that which ought to be adopted. Free exercises have also been added at the end for the purpose of applying all the rules given in the course of the work. The editors flatter themselves that by these improvements the book has acquired much additional value, and that it will be found more deserving of the increasing patronage it has experienced.

the student perfect master of his principles, and enable a man of understanding to learn French with very little assistance from a master.

To complete his task, and to render these Exercises worthy of the public approbation, the author has spared no trouble. He has found them essentially useful in the course of his own practice ; and he trusts, from the solicitude with which he has constantly amended whatever appeared to require it, that they will greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil, and diminish the trouble of the master.

Just published,

By LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, and BROWN,
and G. & W. B. WHITTAKER.

A NEW UNIVERSAL FRENCH GRAMMAR;

Being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax, on a methodical plan : by NICHOLAS HAMEL. Stereotype Edition, carefully corrected, and greatly improved. Price 4s. bound.

CLEF DES THEMES

de la grammaire de NICHOLAS HAMEL, traduits d'après
l'Edition Stéréotype.

THE WORLD IN MINIATURE,

(Adapted for the Use of Schools.)

By N. HAMEL.

This work gives a concise, but exact, instructive, and entertaining account of the extent, situation, climate, population, inhabitants, manners, customs, curiosities, &c. of the several empires, kingdoms, states, and colonies of the world.

N. B. The author, convinced, by daily experience, that the immediate transition from a Book of Exercises, where most of the French words are put under the English sentences, to an English Book, where no French words are to be found, is too abrupt and difficult for most scholars, has put many references at the bottom of every page of this work, which will greatly facilitate the translation into French, and smooth the path of instruction.

Grammatical Exercises

UPON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

COMPARED WITH THE ENGLISH.

PART I.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

A*, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L,
aw, bay, say, day, a, eff, gey, aush, e, jee, kaw, el,
M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y,
emme, enne, o. pay, qu, er, s, tay, u, vay, ex, egre,
Z.
zed

A VOCABULARY.

1. Days.

DIMANCHE,	<i>Sunday.</i>
lundi,	<i>monday.</i>
mardi,	<i>tuesday.</i>
mercredi,	<i>wednesday.</i>
jeudi,	<i>thursday.</i>
vendredi,	<i>friday.</i>
samedi,	<i>saturday</i>

2. Months.

janvier,	<i>january.</i>
fevrier,	<i>february.</i>
mars,	<i>march.</i>
avril,	<i>april.</i>
mai,	<i>may.</i>
juin,	<i>june.</i>
juillet,	<i>july.</i>

août,	<i>august.</i>
septembre,	<i>september.</i>
octobre,	<i>october.</i>
novembre,	<i>november.</i>
décembre,	<i>december.</i>

3. Seasons.

le printemps,	<i>spring,</i>
l'été,	<i>summer.</i>
l'automne,	<i>autumn.</i>
l'hiver,	<i>winter.</i>

4. Elements.

le feu,	<i>fire.</i>
l'eau,	<i>water</i>
la terre,	<i>earth.</i>
l'air,	<i>air.</i>

* These letters are sounded in French pretty near as those under them are sounded in English.

5. *Eating.*

le déjeuner,	<i>breakfast.</i>
le diner,	<i>dinner.</i>
le souper,	<i>supper.</i>
du pain,	<i>bread.</i>
de la croûte,	<i>crust.</i>
de la mie,	<i>crumb.</i>
du beurre,	<i>butter.</i>
de la viande,	<i>meat.</i>
du rôti,	<i>roast meat.</i>
du bouilli,	<i>boiled meat.</i>
du bœuf,	<i>beef.</i>
du veau,	<i>veal.</i>
du mouton,	<i>mutton.</i>
du porc,	<i>pork.</i>
du lard,	<i>bacon.</i>
du gras,	<i>fat.</i>
du maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
une volaille,	<i>a fowl.</i>
du gibier,	<i>game.</i>
un lièvre,	<i>a hair.</i>
des perdrix,	<i>partridges.</i>
un faisan,	<i>a pheasant.</i>
une bécasse,	<i>a woodcock.</i>
une bécassine,	<i>a snipe.</i>
des pigeons,	<i>pigeons.</i>
un chapon,	<i>a capon.</i>
un dindon,	<i>a turkey</i>
une oie,	<i>a goose.</i>
un canard,	<i>a duck.</i>
du poisson,	<i>some fish.</i>
une morue,	<i>a cod.</i>
du saumon,	<i>salmon.</i>
un turbot,	<i>a turbot.</i>
un merlan,	<i>a whiting.</i>
une sole,	<i>a sole.</i>
un maquereau,	<i>a mackerel.</i>
un hareng,	<i>a herring.</i>
une anguille,	<i>an eel.</i>
un brochet,	<i>a pike.</i>
une plie,	<i>a plaice.</i>
une truite,	<i>a trout.</i>
une tortue,	<i>a turtle.</i>
un chou,	<i>a cabbage.</i>
des navets,	<i>turnips.</i>
des carottes,	<i>carrots.</i>
des pommes	
de terre,	<i>potatoes.</i>
des artichauts,	<i>artichokes.</i>
des asperges,	<i>asparagus.</i>

des pois,	<i>pease.</i>
de la chicorée,	<i>succory.</i>
des laitues,	<i>lettuce.</i>
du céleri,	<i>celery.</i>
une pomme,	<i>an apple.</i>
une poire,	<i>a pear.</i>
une orange,	<i>an orange.</i>
un citron,	<i>a lemon.</i>
un abricot,	<i>an apricot.</i>
une pêche,	<i>a peach.</i>
une olive,	<i>an olive.</i>
une cerise,	<i>a cherry.</i>
des groseilles,	<i>gooseberries.</i>
des fraises,	<i>strawberries.</i>
des framboises,	<i>raspberries</i>
des noix,	<i>walnuts.</i>
du raisin,	<i>grapes.</i>
des chataignes,	<i>chesnuts, &c.</i>

6. *Drinking.*

du vin,	<i>wine.</i>
de la bière,	<i>beer.</i>
du cidre,	<i>cyder.</i>
de l'eau,	<i>water</i>
du thé,	<i>tea.</i>
du café,	<i>coffee.</i>
du chocolat,	<i>chocolate.</i>
du cacao,	<i>cocoa, &c.</i>

7. *Things used at table.*

la nappe,	<i>the table cloth.</i>
un plat,	<i>a dish.</i>
une assiette,	<i>a plate.</i>
un couteau,	<i>a knife.</i>
une cuillère,	<i>a spoon.</i>
une fourchette,	<i>a fork.</i>
du sel,	<i>salt.</i>
une salière,	<i>a salt-cellar.</i>
de la moutarde,	<i>mustard.</i>
du poivre,	<i>pepper.</i>
du vinaigre,	<i>vinegar.</i>
un verre,	<i>a glass, &c.</i>

8. *Furniture of a room.*

un lit,	<i>a bed.</i>
un matelas,	<i>a mattress.</i>
des draps,	<i>sheets.</i>
une couverture,	<i>a blanket.</i>
des rideaux,	<i>curtains.</i>
une chaise,	<i>a chair</i>

un tapis,	<i>a carpet.</i>	la hanche,	<i>the hip.</i>
un miroir,	<i>a looking-glass.</i>	la cuisse,	<i>the thigh.</i>
une caisse,	<i>a chest.</i>	le genou,	<i>the knee.</i>
une armoire,	<i>chest of drawers.</i>	la jambe,	<i>the leg.</i>
un tableau,	<i>a picture.</i>	le pied,	<i>the foot.</i>
une chandelle,	<i>a candle.</i>	le talon,	<i>the heel, &c.</i>
un chandelier,	<i>a candlestick.</i>		

des mouchettes, *snuffers.*

un livre,	<i>a book.</i>
du papier,	<i>paper.</i>
de l'encre,	<i>ink.</i>
des plumes,	<i>pens, &c.</i>

9. Of the Body.

le corps,	<i>the body.</i>
le sang,	<i>the blood.</i>
la peau,	<i>the skin.</i>
les os,	<i>the bones.</i>
la moelle,	<i>the marrow.</i>
les veines,	<i>the veins.</i>
le pouls,	<i>the pulse.</i>
les nerfs,	<i>the nerves.</i>
la tête,	<i>the head.</i>
le front,	<i>the forehead.</i>
le visage,	<i>the face.</i>
les yeux,	<i>the eyes.</i>
les paupières,	<i>the eye-lids.</i>
les sourcils,	<i>the eye-brows.</i>
le nez,	<i>the nose.</i>
les oreilles,	<i>the ears.</i>
la bouche,	<i>the mouth.</i>
les lèvres,	<i>the lips.</i>
la langue,	<i>the tongue.</i>
les dents,	<i>the teeth.</i>
les joues,	<i>the cheeks.</i>
le menton,	<i>the chin.</i>
la gorge,	<i>the throat.</i>
le cou,	<i>the neck.</i>
• l'épaule,	<i>the shoulder.</i>
le bras,	<i>the arm.</i>
la main,	<i>the hand.</i>
le pouce,	<i>the thumb.</i>
les doigts,	<i>the fingers.</i>
le sein,	<i>the bosom.</i>
le cœur,	<i>the heart.</i>
le dos,	<i>the back.</i>
le ventre,	<i>the belly.</i>
la ceinture,	<i>the waist.</i>
le côté,	<i>the side.</i>

10. Dress.

un chapeau,	<i>a hat.</i>
un habit,	<i>a coat.</i>
une veste,	<i>a waistcoat.</i>
une culotte,	<i>breeches.</i>
des bas,	<i>stockings.</i>
des souliers,	<i>shoes.</i>
des boucles,	<i>buckles.</i>
des bottes,	<i>boots.</i>
un ruban,	<i>a riband.</i>
un collier,	<i>a necklace.</i>
des pendans	
d'oreille,	<i>ear-rings.</i>
une robe,	<i>a gown.</i>
une jupe,	<i>a petticoat.</i>
un tablier,	<i>an apron.</i>
une montre,	<i>a watch.</i>
des gants,	<i>gloves.</i>
un manchon,	<i>a muff.</i>
un parapluie,	<i>an umbrella.</i>
un mouchoir,	<i>a handkerchief.</i>
	<i>&c.</i>

11. Relations.

père,	<i>father.</i>
mère,	<i>mother.</i>
grand-père,	<i>grand-father.</i>
grand-mère,	<i>grand-mother.</i>
beau-père,	<i>father-in-law.</i>
belle-mère,	<i>mother-in-law.</i>
frère,	<i>brother.</i>
sœur,	<i>sister.</i>
beau-frère,	<i>brother-in-law.</i>
belle-sœur,	<i>sister-in-law.</i>
fil,	<i>son.</i>
filie,	<i>daughter.</i>
petit-fils,	<i>grandson.</i>
petite-fille,	<i>grand-daughter.</i>
parrain,	<i>god-father.</i>
marraine,	<i>god-mother.</i>
filleul,	<i>god-son.</i>
filleule,	<i>god-daughter.</i>

époux,	husband.	tailleur,	taylor.
épouse,	wife.	tanneur,	tanner.
oncle,	uncle.	tapissier,	upholsterer.
tante,	aunt.	teinturier,	dyer.
neveu,	nephew.	tisserand,	weaver.
nièce,	niece.	tonnelier,	cooper.
cousin,	cousin, (male.)	tourneur,	turner.
cousine,	cousin, (female.)	vitrier,	glazier, &c.

12. Professions.

barbier,	barber.
bijoutier,	toyman.
boucher,	butcher.
boulangier,	baker.
brasseur,	brewer.
carrossier,	coach-maker.
chapelier,	hatter.
charpentier,	carpenter.
cocher,	coachman.
cordier,	rope-maker.
cordonnier,	shoe-maker.
coutelier,	cutler.
cuisinier	cook.
doreur,	gilder.
drapier,	draper.
épicier,	grocer.
faïencier,	chinaman.
fondeur,	founder.
forgeron,	blacksmith.
horloger,	clock-maker.
jardinier,	gardener.
imprimeur,	printer.
jouailler,	jeweller.
laboureur,	ploughman.
libraire,	bookseller.
maçon,	bricklayer.
meunier,	miller.
orfèvre,	goldsmith.
pâtissier,	pastry-cook.
peintre,	painter.
perruquier,	hair-dresser.
relieur,	book-binder.
savetier,	cobler.
sellier,	saddler.
serrurier,	lock-smith.

13. A Series of Substantives*.

Amertume, f.	bitterness.
ardoise, f.	slate.
astre, m.	star.
attrait,	charm.
avarice, f.	covetousness.
Bagatelle,	trifle.
bataille,	battle.
bateau,	boat.
bâton,	stick.
bonté,	goodness.
bordure,	frame.
boue, f.	mud.
brouillard,	fog.
bruit,	noise.
butin,	booty.
Cabinet,	closet.
cachet,	seal.
campagne, f.	country.
caractère, m.	temper.
carrosse,	coach.
chair,	flesh.
chaleur,	heat.
chambre, f.	room.
champ,	field.
chanson,	song.
charbon,	coal.
charrue, f.	plough.
chasse,	hunting.
chaux,	lime.
chemin,	road.
chute, f.	fall.
ciel,	heaven.
cire, f.	wax.
ciseaux,	scissors.
cloche, f.	bell.

* The substantives not followed by m or f, are masculine, or feminine, according as the final is masculine or feminine; for which see the table of terminations, p. 18.

clou,	nail.	fleuve, m.	river.
colère, f.	anger.	foi, f.	faith.
conduite, f.	conduct.	foiblesse,	weakness.
confiance,	confidence.	foin,	hay.
corps,	body.	force, f.	strength.
cuir,	leather.	foule, f.	crowd.
cuivre, m.	copper.	fromage,	cheese.
Danse,	dance.	fumée,	smoke.
débat,	debate.	fureur,	fury.
débauche, f.	debauchery	Gâteau,	cake.
défiance,	distrust.	gazon,	turf.
delicatesse,	delicacy.	gelée,	frost.
déluge, m.	flood.	glace,	ice.
dépens,	expence.	gloire,	glory.
désir,	desire.	goût,	taste.
deuil,	mourning.	graine, f.	seed.
devoir,	duty.	grandeur,	greatness.
disette,	scarcity.	guerre,	war.
domaine, m.	dominion.	Haine, f.	hatred.
douceur,	sweetness.	haleine, f.	breath.
durée,	duration.	hardiesse,	boldness.
Eau,	water.	herbe, f.	grass.
école, f.	school.	homme,	man.
écriture,	writing.	honneur,	honour.
église, f.	church.	honte, f.	shame.
énigme, f.	riddle.	horloge, f.	clock.
éperon,	spur.	hûître, f.	oyster.
épine, f.	thorn.	Idée,	idea.
épingle, f.	pin.	impôt,	tax.
épreuve, f.	trial.	injure,	abuse.
espérance,	hope.	jour,	day.
espion,	spy.	juge, m.	judge.
esquisse,	sketch.	justesse,	exactness.
état,	state.	Lait,	milk.
étoile, f.	star.	langue, f.	tongue.
étude, f.	study.	lecture,	reading.
éventail,	fan.	lettre, f.	letter.
Famille,	family.	lien,	tie.
faute, f.	fault.	lieu,	place.
femme,	woman.	lune, f.	moon.
fenêtre, f.	window.	lunettes,	spectacles.
fer,	iron.	luxe, m.	luxury.
fermeté,	firmness.	Maître,	master.
feu,	fire.	maladie,	illness.
feuille,	leaf.	malheur,	misfortune.
fidélité,	faithfulness.	matin,	morning.
fièvre, f.	fever.	mer,	sea.
fleche, f.	arrow.	mois,	month.
fleur,	flower.	moisson,	harvest.

moulin,	<i>mill.</i>	reproche, m.	<i>reproach.</i>
mouvement,	<i>motion.</i>	rêve, m.	<i>dream.</i>
mur,	<i>wall.</i>	ronce, f.	<i>bramble.</i>
Naissance,	<i>birth.</i>	roue, f.	<i>wheel.</i>
neige, f.	<i>snow.</i>	Sac,	<i>bag.</i>
nid,	<i>nest.</i>	savon,	<i>soap.</i>
nuit,	<i>night.</i>	serment,	<i>oath.</i>
Oiseau,	<i>bird.</i>	serrure,	<i>lock.</i>
ombre, f.	<i>shadow.</i>	soir,	<i>evening.</i>
ongle, m.	<i>nail.</i>	sort,	<i>fate.</i>
ordre, m.	<i>order.</i>	soumission,	<i>submission.</i>
orge, m.	<i>barley.</i>	souris, f.	<i>mouse.</i>
orgueil,	<i>pride.</i>	suffrage,	<i>vote.</i>
orient,	<i>east.</i>	Tableau,	<i>picture.</i>
occident,	<i>west.</i>	tache, f.	<i>blot.</i>
Paille,	<i>straw.</i>	tapis,	<i>carpet.</i>
paix,	<i>peace.</i>	témérité,	<i>rashness.</i>
palais,	<i>palace.</i>	titre, m.	<i>title.</i>
panier,	<i>basket.</i>	travail,	<i>work.</i>
paysage,	<i>landscape.</i>	tristesse,	<i>sadness.</i>
peigne, m.	<i>comb.</i>	trou,	<i>hole.</i>
perfidie,	<i>treachery.</i>	troupe, f.	<i>troop.</i>
perte, f.	<i>loss.</i>	troupeau,	<i>flock.</i>
peste, f.	<i>plague.</i>	Vaisseau,	<i>ship.</i>
peuple, m.	<i>people.</i>	vent,	<i>wind.</i>
pierre,	<i>stone.</i>	ver,	<i>worm.</i>
pillage,	<i>plunder.</i>	verge, f.	<i>yard.</i>
pitié, f.	<i>pity.</i>	vérité,	<i>truth.</i>
plomb,	<i>lead.</i>	vertu, f.	<i>virtue.</i>
pluie,	<i>rain.</i>	vie,	<i>life.</i>
plume, f.	<i>pen.</i>	univers,	<i>universe.</i>
poche, f.	<i>pocket.</i>	voisin,	<i>neighbour.</i>
poids,	<i>weight.</i>	voix,	<i>voice.</i>
pont,	<i>bridge.</i>	voyage,	<i>travel.</i>
porte,	<i>door.</i>	usage,	<i>custom.</i>
poudre, f.	<i>powder.</i>		
pré,	<i>meadow.</i>		
présage,	<i>omen.</i>		
présent,	<i>gift.</i>		
prix,	<i>price.</i>		
progrès,	<i>progress.</i>		
pudeur,	<i>modesty.</i>		
Raison,	<i>reason.</i>		
rasoir,	<i>razor.</i>		
ravage,	<i>havock.</i>		
rayon,	<i>ray.</i>		
règle, f.	<i>rule.</i>		
repas,	<i>meal.</i>		
réponse, f.	<i>answer.</i>		

14. A series of Adjectives.

absolu	<i>absolute.</i>
adroit,	<i>dexterous.</i>
affable,	<i>courteous.</i>
affreux,	<i>frightful.</i>
aimable,	<i>amiable.</i>
aise,	<i>glad.</i>
aisé,	<i>easy.</i>
amer,	<i>bitter.</i>
ancien.	<i>old.</i>
assidu,	<i>assiduous.</i>
aveugle,	<i>blind.</i>
avide,	<i>greedy.</i>

Barbare,	<i>barbarous.</i>	foible,	<i>weak.</i>
bas,	<i>low.</i>	fort,	<i>strong.</i>
beau,	<i>fine.</i>	frais,	<i>fresh.</i>
blanc,	<i>white.</i>	Généreux,	<i>generous.</i>
bleu,	<i>blue.</i>	glorieux,	<i>glorious.</i>
bon,	<i>good.</i>	gracieux,	<i>graceful.</i>
bossu,	<i>crooked.</i>	grand,	<i>great.</i>
Capricieux,	<i>whimsical.</i>	gras,	<i>fat.</i>
chaud,	<i>hot.</i>	gros,	<i>big.</i>
chauve,	<i>bald.</i>	Habile,	<i>able.</i>
cher,	<i>dear.</i>	hardi,	<i>bold.</i>
clair,	<i>clear.</i>	haut,	<i>high.</i>
conforme,	<i>conformable.</i>	heureux,	<i>happy.</i>
contagieux,	<i>contagious.</i>	honnête,	<i>honest.</i>
content,	<i>satisfied.</i>	honteux,	<i>shameful.</i>
convenable,	<i>fit.</i>	humain,	<i>humane.</i>
coupable,	<i>guilty.</i>	humide,	<i>damp.</i>
cru,	<i>raw.</i>	Illustre,	<i>illustrious.</i>
curieux,	<i>curious.</i>	imparfait,	<i>imperfect.</i>
Dangereux,	<i>dangerous.</i>	impie,	<i>impious.</i>
dédaigneux,	<i>disdainful.</i>	importun,	<i>troublesome.</i>
dégoutant,	<i>loathsome.</i>	incommode,	<i>inconvenient.</i>
dernier,	<i>last.</i>	incrédule,	<i>incredulous.</i>
désagréable,	<i>unpleasant.</i>	indigne,	<i>unworthy.</i>
difficile,	<i>difficult.</i>	industrieux,	<i>industrious.</i>
digne,	<i>worthy.</i>	infâme,	<i>infamous.</i>
douloureux,	<i>painful.</i>	infidèle,	<i>unfaithful.</i>
douteux,	<i>doubtful.</i>	ingrat,	<i>ungrateful.</i>
doux,	<i>sweet.</i>	injurieux,	<i>injurious.</i>
droit,	<i>straight.</i>	injuste,	<i>unjust.</i>
Eclatant,	<i>bright.</i>	inquiet,	<i>restless.</i>
effroyable,	<i>frightful.</i>	insensé,	<i>mad.</i>
ennuyeux,	<i>tedious.</i>	inutile,	<i>useless.</i>
enroué,	<i>hoarse.</i>	ivre,	<i>drunk.</i>
entêté,	<i>stubborn.</i>	Jaloux,	<i>jealous.</i>
envieux,	<i>envious.</i>	jaune,	<i>yellow.</i>
épais,	<i>thick.</i>	jeune,	<i>young.</i>
étonnant,	<i>wonderful.</i>	joli,	<i>pretty.</i>
étrange,	<i>strange.</i>	juste,	<i>just.</i>
étranger,	<i>foreign.</i>	Lâche,	<i>coward.</i>
étroit,	<i>narrow.</i>	large,	<i>broad.</i>
exquis,	<i>exquisite.</i>	las,	<i>tired.</i>
Fâcheux,	<i>sad.</i>	lent,	<i>slow.</i>
facile,	<i>easy.</i>	libre,	<i>free.</i>
fameux,	<i>famous.</i>	Maigre,	<i>lean.</i>
faux,	<i>false.</i>	malade,	<i>sick.</i>
féroce,	<i>fierce.</i>	malaisé,	<i>hard.</i>
fertile,	<i>fruitful.</i>	malheureux,	<i>unhappy.</i>
flatteur,	<i>flattering.</i>	mauvais,	<i>bad.</i>

méchant,	<i>wicked.</i>	profond,	<i>deep.</i>
méprisable,	<i>contemptible.</i>	prodigue,	<i>prodigal.</i>
muet,	<i>dumb.</i>	Réel,	<i>real.</i>
Nécessaire,	<i>uecessary.</i>	régulier,	<i>regular.</i>
net,	<i>clean.</i>	respectueux,	<i>respectful.</i>
neuf,	<i>new.</i>	rêveur,	<i>thoughtful.</i>
noir,	<i>black.</i>	rusé,	<i>cunning,</i>
nombreux,	<i>numerous.</i>	Sage,	<i>wise.</i>
nouveau,	<i>new.</i>	saint,	<i>holy,</i>
nuisible,	<i>hurtful.</i>	sauvage,	<i>wild.</i>
Obéissant,	<i>obedient.</i>	sec,	<i>dry.</i>
odieux,	<i>odious.</i>	sérieux,	<i>serious.</i>
orageux,	<i>stormy.</i>	superflu,	<i>superfluous.</i>
ordinaire,	<i>usual.</i>	Tel,	<i>such.</i>
Parfait,	<i>perfect.</i>	téméraire,	<i>rash.</i>
perfide,	<i>perfidious.</i>	timide,	<i>fearful.</i>
périlleux,	<i>perilous.</i>	tranquille,	<i>quiet.</i>
pesant,	<i>heavy,</i>	triste,	<i>sad.</i>
petit,	<i>little.</i>	Vert.	<i>green.</i>
pieux,	<i>pious.</i>	véritable,	<i>true.</i>
plaintif,	<i>mournful.</i>	vieux,	<i>old.</i>
plein,	<i>full.</i>	voluptueux,	<i>voluptuous.</i>
poli,	<i>civil.</i>	vrai,	<i>true.</i>

SOUNDS OF BIRDS AND BEASTS

Les oiseaux chantent,	<i>birds sing.</i>
le perroquet parle,	<i>the parrot talks.</i>
le merle siffle,	<i>the blackbird whistles.</i>
la colombe gémit,	<i>the dove cooes.</i>
le pigeon roucoule,	<i>the pigeon cooes.</i>
le coq chante,	<i>the cock crows.</i>
la poule glousse,	<i>the hen clucks.</i>
le corbeau croasse,	<i>the raven croaks.</i>
le cheval hennit,	<i>the horse neighs.</i>
l'âne brait,	<i>the ass brays.</i>
le bœuf meugle,	<i>the ox lows.</i>
le taureau mugit,	<i>the bull roars.</i>
le lion rugit,	<i>the lion roars.</i>
le serpent siffle,	<i>the snake hisses.</i>
la brebis bêle,	<i>the sheep bleats.</i>
le chat miaule et file,	<i>the cat mews and purrs.</i>
le chien aboie,	<i>the dog barks.</i>
le lièvre crie,	<i>the hare squeaks.</i>
le loup hurle,	<i>the wolf howls.</i>
le cerf brame,	<i>the stag brays.</i>
la grenouille coasse,	<i>the frog croaks</i>

PART II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French nine parts of Speech, which are called, 1. *Article*. 2. *Substantive*. 3. *Adjective*. 4. *Pronoun*. 5. *Verb*, these five declinable. 6. *Adverb*. 7. *Preposition*. 8. *Conjunction*. 9. *Interjection*, indeclinable.

1. OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a word placed before a substantive, to determine the extent of its signification.

There are three articles in French. 1. The definite, *le, la*, *les*, which is used before a noun taken in a particular or universal sense. 2. The indefinite, *un*, or *une*, which is used before a noun singular, taken in an indeterminate sense. 3. The partitive, *du, de la, des*, which is used before a noun to denote a certain number or portion of a thing. They are declined as follows:

1. *Definitive Article*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural for all.</i>	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>		
N. Ac.	le,	la.	l'*	les,	the
G. Ab.	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	of or from the
D.	au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	to the

N. B. The *m* denotes a noun masculine; *f* a noun feminine; *v* a noun which begins with a vowel; *h* a noun which begins with an *h* mute, and *pl* a noun plural. This mark — indicates that the words are alike in both languages, or differ only by their termination.

The father; of the son; to the brother. The mother;
pere m fils m frère m mère f
 of the daughter; to the sister. The child; of the angel; to
 • *fille f sœur f enfant v ange v*
 the soul. The man; of the history; to the harmony. The
âme v homme h histoire h harmonie h
 gardens; of the houses; to the friends. The master of
jardins pl maisons pl amis pl maître m
 the house. The rays of the sun. The lustre of the stars.
maison f rayons pl soleil m éclat v étoiles pl
 The return from the city. The breakfast; of the dinner; to
retour m ville f déjeuner m dîner m

* *l'* is used before a noun of both genders which begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute, as *l'oiseau, l'homme, &c.*

the supper. The malice of the boys. The prattling of
souper m — f garçons pl babil m
 the girls. The laziness of the scholars. The friendship; of
filles pl paresse f écoliers pl amitié v
 the humanity; to the hatred. The shame; of the horror; to
—té h haine f honte f horreur h
 the honesty. Give the apple to the boy, and the orange to
honnêteté h donnez pomme f garçon m et — v
 the girl. The admiral spoke to the king, to the queen,
fille f amiral v parla roi m reine f
 and to the princes. The moon is the cause of the eclipses
— pl lune f est — f — pl
 of the sun.
soleil m

2. Indefinite article.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>No plural.</i>	
N. Acc.	un,	une,		<i>a</i>
G. Ab.	d'un, d'une,			<i>of or from a</i>
D.	à un, à uné,			<i>to a</i>

A dictionary and a grammar. A bird and a cage. A
dictionnaire m grammaire f oiseau m — f
 house; of a garden; to a tree; from a pear. A watch; of a
maison f jardin m arbre m poire f montre f
 diamond; to a ring. A garden; of a house; to an orchard;
diamant m bague f jardin m maison f verger m
 from a park. A river; of a boat; from a ship.
parc m rivière f bateau m vaisseau m

3. Partitive article.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural for all.</i>
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>v. h.</i>	
N. Acc.	du,	de la,	de l'	<i>des, some</i>
N. Acc.	de*,	de,	d'	<i>de, some</i>

Give me some bread and some butter; some meat and
donnez-moi pain m et beurre m viande f
 some mustard; some eggs and some oranges. Give me
moutarde f œufs pl — pl donnez-moi
 some good bread, and some good butter; some good meat,
bon bon bonne
 and some good mustard; some good eggs and some good
bonne bons bonnes
 apples. I have some ink and some pens.
pommes f j'ai encre v plumes pl

* When a substantive taken in a partitive sense is preceded by an adjective, the word *de* is always used instead of *du*, *de la*, or *des*; as *du pain*, *de bon pain*; *de la viande*, *de bonne viande*, &c.

4. Declension of proper Names and Pronouns.

Singular.

Plural for all

N. Acc. take neither prepositions nor article before them.

	m.	f.	v. h.		
G. Ab.	de,	de,	d'	de, prep.	of or from
D.	à,	à,	à,	à, prep.	to

The poems of Homer. The genius of Milton. The
poèmes pl Homère h génie m —
 courage of Achilles. Speak to Henry. I receive a letter
— m — v parlez — je reçois lettre f
 from Stephen. From Paris to London; from Dover to
Etienne v — Londres Douvres
 Calais; from Vienna to Rome. The book belongs to
— Vienne — livre m appartient
 John or to Peter.
Jean ou Pierre

2. OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A substantive is the name of a person or a thing; as, *un homme*, a man; *une maison*, a house; *une pensée*, a thought.

A substantive is singular or plural. It is singular, when we speak of one person or thing; as, *un livre*, a book; *un cheval*, a horse. It is plural, when we speak of more than one, as *deux livres*, two books; *trois chevaux*, three horses.

Nouns are masculine or feminine. Their gender may be known by the following rule and terminations, which are very useful, and should be learnt by heart.

How to distinguish when a Noun is masculine or feminine.

A general rule.—Among living creatures, the males are of the masculine gender, and the females of the feminine. Thus, *un homme*, *un bœuf*, *un coq*, &c. a man, an ox, a cock, are masculine; and *une femme*, *une vache*, *une poule*, &c. a woman, a cow, a hen, are feminine.

We must except from this rule, reptiles, insects, fishes, and many wild birds and beasts, whose males and females are in French both masculine or both feminine. Thus for instance, *une morue*, a cod, *une mouche*, a fly, *une hirondelle*, a swallow, are, both males and females, of the feminine gender; and *un saumon*, a salmon, *un serpent*, a snake, *un moineau*, a sparrow, are males and females of the masculine gender. Their gender, like that of inanimate objects, is known by the termination of their names, as follows:

Masculine terminations.

1. * All nouns which end in a consonant, and have any other final than *x*, *eur*, and *ion*, and also *son*, preceded by a vowel, are masculine, as well as the words ending in

a *as* un opéra
é acc. not preceded by *t*
 as un pré

2. *i* un oubli

o un écho

3. *u* un chapeau

4. *age* un paysage

é*ge* un piège

u*ge* le déluge

a*cle* un obstacle

a*ire* le vulgaire

a*ume* un royaume

5. é*me* un diadème

i*sm*e un sophisme

ô*me* un atôme

6. o*ire* un oratoire

all trees un chêne

and all adjectives and verbs substantively used.

Exceptions to the masculine.

1. * La boisson, la vie*ux*, la chair, la chanson, la clef, la cour, la cuiller, la cuisson, la dent, la dot, la façon, la faim, la fin, la fois, la forêt, la hart, la leçon, la main, la maman, la mer, la moisson, la mort, la mousson, la nef, la nuit, la part, la rançon, la soit, la souris, la tour, la vis.

2. la foi, la fourmi, la loi, la merci.

3. l'eau, la glu, la peau, la tribu, la vertu.

4. la cage, l'image, la page, la rage.

5. la crème.

6. la gloire, l'histoire, la mémoire, la nageoire, la passoire, une poire, la racloire.

N. B. The words which end in *a*, *é*, *o*, *é*ge**, *u*ge**, *a*cle**, *a*ire**, *a*ume**, *i*sm*e*, *ô*me**, are all masculine, with few exceptions.

Feminine terminations.

1. * All nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, and *ion*, and also in *son*, preceded by a vowel, are feminine; as well as those which end in

2. é*e* une armée

3. té acc. la bonté

4. i*e* la vie

5. a*ce* la grâce

a*nce*, a*ns*e l'espérance

6. e*nce*, e*ns*e la patience

a*de* la promenade

7. u*de* la servitude

8. i*ère* la rivière

9. u*re* une blessure

10. l*le* la chandelle

m*me* une pomme

n*ne* la canne

r*re* la terre

11. s*se* la chasse

t*te* la patte

Exceptions to the feminine.

1. * *x*: le choix, le crucifix, le flux, le reflux, le prix, *eur*: le bonheur, le cœur, le cœur, le déshonneur, l'extérieur, l'honneur, le labeur, le malheur, les pleurs, *ion*: le croupion, le lampion, un million, un bastion, *son*: le poison, le tison, le blazon, l'horizon, le gazon.

2. a*n* athée, un mausolée, un trophée.

3. un arrêté, un comté, un comité, le côté, un été, un pâté, un traité.

4. le foie, le génie, un incendie, un parapluie.

5. un espace.

6. le silence.

7. le prélude.

8. le cimetière, le derrière.

9. un augure, du beurre, le mercure, le murmure, le parjure.

10. un codicille, un chevreuille, un intervalle, un li-belle.

11. le carrosse, le colosse.

EXERCISE upon the GENDER OF NOUNS.

The rules upon the articles must be applied here ; that is to say, the articles must be used, and agree with their substantive in genders, numbers and cases.

The virtue, of the sobriety; to the prudence; from the
vertu —été —
 hand; the necklace; of the reason; to the miracle; the
main collier raison —
 nation; of the cupola; to an age; a boat; of the ice; to the
— dôme âge bateau glace
 clemency; from a church-yard; the (native country); of a
clémence cimetière patrie
 colony; to the goodness; the happiness; of the poison; to
—nie bonté bonheur —
 the fish; from the price; a cage; the salary; of a song; to a
poisson prix — —aire chanson
 knife; of a fork; to the salad; of a fur; the beer; of the night
couteau fourchette —de fourrure bière nuit
 a summer; the constancy; of the death; to the castle; an
été —ce mort château
 ink-pot; the directory; a building; of the fear; to a com-
encrier —aire bâtiment peur
 parison; the burning; a suffering; of a calamity; the bed; of
—raison brûlure souffrance —té lit
 the dish; to a chimney; of a picture; some paper; a pen-
plat cheminée tableau papier ca-
 knife; the heaven; of the garden; the market; of the roof; a
nif ciel jardin marché toit
 pot; the looking-glass; the bolt; of a day; to the morning;
— miroir verrou jour matin
 of the evening; of an advantage; the painting; of the fate;
soir avantage peinture sort
 to the felicity; of a secret; to the perseverance; the courage;
félicité — persévérance —
 an education; of the forest; to the yard; of a genius; the
— forêt cour génie
 description; of an effect; the pleasure; of the neatness; to
— effet plaisir propriété
 the life; from the light; of the time; a variation; the sim-
vie lumière temps —
 plicity; of the nature; an art; of a description; to the north;
—té — — — nord
 of a point; to the youth; of the glory; the poetry; some
— jeunesse gloire poésie
 wisdom; a reward; the silence; the providence; some
sagesse récompense — —
 patience; a restitution; a boarding-school; of the harvest.
— — pension moisson.

OF ADJECTIVES.

An adjective expresses the quality of a person or thing. Such are *grand*, great; *bon*, good; *mauvais*, wicked; *petit*, little. An adjective is always joined or relative to a substantive or a pronoun.

As the adjectives agree in French with their substantives, they have also two genders and numbers. They form their feminine from the masculine, and the plural from the singular, after the following directions.

How to form the feminine of Adjectives.

The adjectives become feminine, by changing their masculine terminations, as follows:

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>		<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
	<i>é acc. into</i>	<i>ée</i>	as	<i>aimé</i>	<i>aimée</i>
	<i>e mute</i>	<i>alike</i>		<i>sage</i>	<i>sage</i>
1.	* <i>i</i>	<i>ie</i>		<i>poli</i>	<i>polie</i>
	<i>u</i>	<i>ue</i>		<i>absolu</i>	<i>absolue</i>
2.	<i>c</i>	<i>che</i>		<i>blanc</i>	<i>blanche</i>
	<i>f</i>	<i>ve</i>		<i>actif</i>	<i>active</i>
	<i>el</i>	<i>elle</i>		<i>cruel</i>	<i>cruelle</i>
	<i>eil</i>	<i>eille</i>		<i>pareil</i>	<i>pareille</i>
	<i>ul</i>	<i>ulle</i>		<i>nul</i>	<i>nulle</i>
	<i>an</i>	<i>anne</i>		<i>paysan</i>	<i>paysanne</i>
	<i>ien</i>	<i>ienne</i>		<i>ancien</i>	<i>ancienne</i>
	<i>on</i>	<i>onne</i>		<i>bon</i>	<i>bonne</i>
3.	{ <i>ais</i>	<i>aisse</i>		<i>épais</i>	<i>épaisse</i>
	{ <i>as</i>	<i>asse</i>		<i>gras</i>	<i>grasse</i>
	<i>os</i>	<i>osse</i>		<i>gros</i>	<i>grosse</i>
4.	<i>et</i>	<i>ette</i>		<i>net</i>	<i>nette</i>
	<i>ot</i>	<i>otte</i>		<i>sot</i>	<i>sotte</i>
5.	<i>eur</i>	<i>euse</i>		<i>chanteur</i>	<i>chanteuse</i>
	<i>eux</i>	<i>euse</i>		<i>heureux</i>	<i>heureuse</i>
	<i>eau</i>	<i>elle</i>		<i>beau</i>	<i>belle</i>
	<i>oux</i>	<i>ouse</i>		<i>jaloux</i>	<i>jalouse</i>
	<i>ou</i>	<i>olle</i>		<i>fou</i>	<i>folle</i>
	<i>aux</i>	<i>ausse</i>		<i>faux</i>	<i>fausse</i>
6.	The adjectives of all others final take an <i>e</i> mute for the feminine, as				
	<i>petit</i>	<i>petite</i>		<i>grand</i>	<i>grande</i>

EXCEPTIONS

1. * *favori* makes *favorite* in the feminine gender.
2. *caduc*, *grec*, *public*, *turc*, make in the feminine *caduque*, *grecque*, *publique*, *turque*.
3. *mauvais*, *ras*, *frais*, make in the feminine *mauvaise*, *rase*, *fraîche*.

4. *complet, discret, inquiet, replet, secret, and dévot* make in the feminine *complète, discrète, inquiète, replete, secrète, dévote*.

5. Some of the verbal adjectives change the final *eur* into *eresse*; as *enchanteur, enchanteresse; pêcheur, pécheresse; vengeur, vengeresse*. The adjectives ending in *eur* take an *e* for the feminine, when they are not derived from verbs; as *intérieur, intérieure; majeur, majeure*.

6. *doux, roux, long, malin, bénin, tiers* make in the feminine *douce, rousse, longue, maligne, bénigne, tierce*.

N. B. *beau, nouveau, fou, mou, vieux*, make in the masculine *bel, nouvel, fol, mol, vieil*, when placed before nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. It is from that final they form their feminine, by adding *le* to it; as *nouvel, m. nouvelle, f. bel, m. belle, f. vieil, m. vieille, f.*

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of the FEMININE of ADJECTIVES.

N. B. The adjectives which must, in French, be placed after the substantives, have the last letter in *Italic*.

The learner must apply the rules about the articles, and the gender of substantives.

A good man; a good woman; a great garden; a great house;

bon homme *femme* *grand jardin* *maison*

a white handkerchief; a white gown; a new hat; a new

blanc mouchoir *robe f* *neuf chapeau*

waistcoat; an attentive boy; an attentive girl; a fat ox; a fat

veste f *—tif garçon* *filles* *gras bœuf*

cow; an ambitious project; an ambitious woman; a cruel

vache *—tieux projet* *femme* *—*

father; a cruel mother; a bitter fruit; a bitter apple; a con-

père *mère* *amer* *—* *pomme*

stant friend; a constant resolution; an elegant speech; an

— ami *résolution* *élégant discours*

elegant lady; a figurative sense; a figurative expression; a

dame *—tif sens* *—*

frugal dinner; a frugal life; some cold beef; some cold meat;

— dîner *vie* *froid bœuf* *viande f*

a warlike people; a warlike nation; a long discourse; a long

guerrier peuple m *—* *—* *—rs*

period; a natural style; a natural inclination; the publick

phrase f *—rel* *— m* *—* *public*

interest; the publick opinion; a specious pretence; a specious

intérêt *—* *spécieux prétexte m*

answer; a high wall; a high tower; a pretty boy; a pretty

réponse f *haut mur* *tour* *joli garçon*

girl; a fine hat; a fine gown; a pernicious game; a pernicious

filles *beau chapeau* *robe f* *—cieux jeu*

company.

—gnie.

How to form the Plural of Substantives and Adjectives.

The substantives and adjectives form their plural from the singular, by changing their final as follows :

	<i>singular.</i>	<i>plural.</i>	<i>singular.</i>	<i>plural.</i>
	e into	es	as sage	sages
	al	aux	cheval	chevaux
1. *	ail	aux	travail	travaux
	au	aux	beau	beaux
	eu	eux	jeu	jeux
2.	ou	oux	chou	choux
3.	ent, ant	ens, ans	prudent	prudens
	s.		le fils	les fils
	x	<i>alike</i>	la voix	les voix
	z		le nez	les nez
4.	All other finals take an s for the plural; as			
	bon	bons	petit	petits

N. B. The plural masculine of adjectives is formed from the singular masculine; and the plural feminine from the singular feminine; as *grand*, *grands*; *grande*, *grandes*; *beau*, *beaux*; *belle*, *belles*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. * *attirail, détail, éventail, gouvernail* and *sérail* take an *s* for the plural.
2. *Trou, cou, fou, hibou*, and *licou* take an *s* for the plural.
3. The words of one syllable only take an *s*; as *dent*, singular; *dents*, plural.
4. *aïeul* makes *aïeux*; *ciel*, *cieux*; *œil*, *yeux*; *tout*, *tous*.

EXERCISE upon the PLURAL of SUBSTANTIVES
and ADJECTIVES.

Remember to apply in this exercise the rules for the articles, and for the feminine of adjectives, as well as for their plural; and in every exercise, the rules which precede must be applied.

An harmonious concert; two harmonious concerts; an
—nieux — deux
 harmonious voice; three harmonious voices. a white horse;
voix trois blanc cheval
 four white horses; a white house; five white houses. Your
quatre maison cinq votre
 brother is prudent and wise; your brothers are prudent and
frère est — et sage vos sont
 wise; your sister is prudent and wise; your sisters are
votre sœur vos

prudent and wise. A pretty picture; a pretty girl; two
joli tableau *filles*
 pretty pictures; two pretty girls. The English general
Anglois général
 is brave and courageous; the English generals are brave
 — *général*
 and courageous; our army is brave and courageous; our
notre armée *nos*
 armies are brave and courageous. Your son is young
vosre fils *jeune*
 and handsome; your sons are young and handsome; your
beau *vos* *vosre*
 daughter is young and handsome; your daughters are
filles *vos*
 young and handsome. This book is new; these books
ce livre m *neuf* *ces*
 are new; this table is new; these tables are new.
cette — *f* *ces*
 My uncle is rich and generous; my uncles are rich
mon oncle *riche* *généreux* *mes*
 and generous; my aunt is rich and generous; my aunts
ma tante *mes*
 are rich and generous. Give me a small knife, and a
donnez-moi *petit couteau*
 small fork; give me two small knives, and two small
fourchette *donnez-moi*
 forks. This animal is cruel and revengeful; these animals
cet — — *vindictif* *ces*
 are cruel and revengeful; this beast is cruel and revengeful;
cette bête f
 these beasts are cruel and revengeful. Our love is mutual;
ces *notre amour mutuel*
 our sentiments are mutual; our fear is mutual; our fears
nos — *notre crainte f* *nos*
 are mutual. I have a good fire in my room; I have two
j'ai *feu dans ma chambre f*
 good fires in my house.
ma maison

1. OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, to avoid a repetition, which would be tedious.

They are called conjunctive, when they are the nominative, or the object of the verb; as, *I love him*. *I* is the nominative, and *him* the object of the verb *love*. They are called disjunctive, when they come alone, or after an imperative, a conjunction, or a preposition; as, *do that for me*.

These pronouns are the same in English whether they be conjunctive or disjunctive; but they are very different in French, and therefore must be carefully distinguished.

Declension of the Conjunctive Personal pronouns.

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
<i>je I</i>	<i>en of me</i>	<i>me to me</i>	<i>me me</i>
<i>tu thou</i>	<i>en of thee</i>	<i>te to thee</i>	<i>te the</i>
<i>il he</i>	<i>en of him</i>	<i>lui to him</i>	<i>le him</i>
<i>elle she</i>	<i>en of her</i>	<i>lui to her</i>	<i>la her</i>
<i>nous we</i>	<i>en of us</i>	<i>nous to us</i>	<i>nous us</i>
<i>vous you</i>	<i>en of you</i>	<i>vous to you</i>	<i>vous you</i>
<i>ils they</i>	<i>en of them</i>	<i>leur to them</i>	<i>les them</i>
<i>elles they</i>	<i>en of them</i>	<i>leur to them</i>	<i>les them</i>

Declension of the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

N.	G.	D.	Acc.
<i>moi I</i>	<i>de moi of me</i>	<i>à moi to me</i>	<i>moi me</i>
<i>toi thou</i>	<i>de toi of thee</i>	<i>à toi to thee</i>	<i>toi thee</i>
<i>lui he</i>	<i>de lui of him</i>	<i>à lui to him</i>	<i>lui him</i>
<i>elle she</i>	<i>d'elle of her</i>	<i>à elle to her</i>	<i>elle her</i>
<i>nous we</i>	<i>de nous of us</i>	<i>à nous to us</i>	<i>nous us</i>
<i>vous you</i>	<i>de vous of you</i>	<i>à vous to you</i>	<i>vous you</i>
<i>eux they</i>	<i>d'eux of them</i>	<i>à eux to them</i>	<i>eux them</i>
<i>elles they</i>	<i>d'elles of them</i>	<i>à elles to them</i>	<i>elles them</i>

The conjunctive pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles* go always before the verb of which they are the nominative case, except in an interrogative sentence, when they go after; ex. *je parle*, I speak; *parlez-vous?* do you speak?

If the personal pronouns be in the genitive, dative, or accusative, they always go immediately before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary; ex. *je les connois*, I know them; *je les ai connus*, I have known them. If, however, the verb were in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns should go after it; ex. *voyez-les, parlez-lui*, see them, speak to him. The disjunctive pronouns are put in the same place in French as they are in English, and require no explanation.

N. B. A *c* is put under the pronoun when it is conjunctive, and a *d* when it is disjunctive.

I speak. Who speaks? I. He reads. Who reads? He.
c parle qui parle d c lit qui lit c d
 They dance. Who dance? They. He speaks to me; he
c dansent qui danse d c c d
 and his brother speak against me; they love me; you
et son frère parlent contre d c aiment c c
 know them; you speak to him, you speak of them, you
connoissez c c parlez c c d c
 speak against them; we love you, we respect them, we
contre d c aimons c c respectons c c
 respect him; he speaks to you and to me; he speaks to him
c c parle d et d c d
 and to her.
et d

2. OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns denote the possession, and particularise the substantive to which they have reference. They are called conjunctive when they come before a substantive; and disjunctive when they refer to a substantive antecedent. The first take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative; the second are declined with the definite article *le, la, les*, in the nominative and accusative; *du, de la, des* in the genitive; and *au, à la, aux* in the dative, like a substantive. Both are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the the noun to which they are joined or relative. They are as follows.

Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
mon	ma	mon	mes		my
ton	ta	ton	tes		thy
son	sa	son	ses		his, her, its
notre			nos	alike	our
votre			vos		your
leur	alike		leurs		their

Disjunctive Possessive Pronouns.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	thine
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	alike	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs		theirs

My brother; my sister; my brothers; my sisters; of my
frère m *sœur f*
 garden; of my house; of my books; of my tables; to my
jardin m *maison f* *livres pl.* — *pl*
 country; to my nation; to my horses; to my cows; his
pays m — *f* *chevaux pl* *vaches pl*
 master; his mistress; of his pleasure; to his duty; our
maître m *maîtresse f* *plaisir m* *devoir m*
 friend; of your picture; to their room; of our closet; to
ami m *tableau m* *chambre f* *cabinet*
 your bed; of their enemies; of my soul; to his humour.
lit *ennemis pl* *âme f* *humeur. h f*

3. OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and, as it were, point to the eye, the person or thing spoken of. They are the following.

Singular.			Plural.		
m.	f.		m.	f.	
1. ce, cet	cette,	<i>this, that</i>	ces	ces	<i>these, those</i>
2. celui	celle,	<i>that</i>	ceux	celles	<i>those</i>
3. celui-ci	celle-ci,	<i>this</i>	ceux-ci	celles-ci	<i>these</i>
	celui-là	<i>that</i>	ceux-là	celles-là	<i>those</i>
4. ceci, m.	<i>this ; cela, m. that.</i>		They are used as follows :		

1. The pronoun *ce* is used before a substantive masculine when it begins with a consonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute; as *ce jardin, cet oiseau, cet homme*.

2. *celui, celle, &c.* are used for *that* and *those*, followed by a genitive case, or a relative pronoun; as *ce livre vaut mieux que celui de mon frère*, this book is better than *that* of my brother.

3. When we have spoken of several objects, *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci* are used with reference to the last; and *celui-là*, or *celle-là* to the former; as, *le vice et la vertu ont des effets contraires; celle-ci rend l'homme heureux, et celui-là le rend malheureux*.

4. *ceci* and *cela* are used to shew some particular object, without naming it; as, *donnez-moi ceci, et gardez cela pour vous*; give me *this*, and keep *that* for yourself.

N. B. These pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they are joined or relative. They take the preposition *de* for the genitive case, and *à* for the dative.

This wine is good; that beer is good; that man is
vin m est bon bière f homme h
 learned; that woman is learned; these apples are ripe; do
savant femme pommes sont mûres
 not speak of that child; do not speak of that girl; of these
ne parlez pas enfant m fille f
 pens; to these books; this bird; of that cage; to that
plumes pl livres pl oiseau m — f
 country; these arms; of these soldiers; to those armies;
pays m armes pl soldats pl armées pl
 give me this or that; do not do that.
donnez-moi ou ne faites pas.

4. OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns have a particular reference to the noun to which they belong, and come immediately after it in French. They are as follows:

*Pronouns relative to Persons.**Of both Genders and Numbers.*

N.	qui	who
G.	de qui, dont	whose, of whom
D.	à qui	to whom
Acc.	que	whom

*Pronouns relative to Animals and Things.**Singular.**Plural.*

	m. f.	m.	f.	m. f.	m.	f.
N.	qui	lequel	laquelle	qui	lesquels	lesquelles
G.	dont	duquel	de laquelle	dont	desquels	desquelles
D.		auquel	à laquelle		auxquels	auxquelles
Acc.	que	lequel	laquelle	que	lesquels	lesquelles
						which

N. B. *qui* is used in the nominative, *dont* in the genitive and *que* in the accusative, for both genders and numbers of all sorts of objects; as, *l'homme qui lit*, *le cheval qui pait*, *le livre qui est sur la table*, nom.—*l'homme dont vous parlez*, *le cheval dont vous parlez*, *le livre dont vous parlez*, gen.—*l'homme que je vois*, *le cheval que je vois*, *le livre que je vois*, acc.

5. OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are used to ask questions, and have reference to the noun mentioned in the answer; as, *qui est là?*—*votre frère*. They are the following:

*With reference to persons.**With reference to things.*

N.	qui	who?	quoi	what?
G.	de qui	of whom?	de quoi	of what?
D.	à qui	to whom?	à quoi	to what?
Acc.	qui	whom?	que	what?

*With reference to Persons and Things.**Singular.**Plural.*

	m.	f.	m.	f.	
N. Acc.	quel	quelle	quels	quelles	what?
G.	de quel	de quelle	de quels	de quelles	of what?
D.	à quel	à quelle	à quels	à quelles	to what?

With reference to Persons and Things.

N. Acc.	lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which?</i>
G.	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which?</i>
D.	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which?</i>

N. B. *what* is expressed by *quoi* when it signifies *what thing*; and by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive; as, *je sais en quoi vous êtes coupable*, I know in *what* you are guilty. *Quel livre lisez vous?* *what* book do you read?

6. OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

The indeterminate pronouns are so called, because they express a vague and indeterminate object. They are the following:

on *	<i>one, (one's-self)</i>	quinconque	<i>whoever</i>
le même	<i>the same</i>	l'un l'autre	<i>one another</i>
plusieurs	<i>many, several</i>	l'un et l'autre	<i>both</i>
autres	<i>others</i>	l'un ou l'autre	<i>either</i>
quelqu'un	<i>somebody</i>	ni l'un ni l'autre	<i>neither</i>
chacun	<i>every body</i>	aucun	<i>none</i>
tout	<i>every thing</i>	personne	<i>nobody</i>
tout ce qui	<i>whatever</i>	rien	<i>nothing</i>

* *on* makes *de soi* in the genitive, *à soi* in the dative, *se* in the accusative, and *soi* after a preposition; all other pronouns take the preposition *de* for the genitive, and *à* for the dative; as, *rien, de rien, à rien*.

As the three last classes of pronouns cannot be applied but in sentences too difficult for beginners, the exercises upon them will be found in the syntax, rule 79, and following.

OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Inf. Avoir, *to have.* *Ger.* ayant, *having.* *Part. eu.* *had.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Ai, *	as,	a ;		avons,	avez,	ont.
B Avois,	avois,	avoit ;		avions,	aviez,	avoient.
C Eus,	eus,	eut ;		eûmes	eûtes,	eurent. o
D Aurai	auras,	aura ;		aurons,	aurez,	auront.
E Aurois,	aurois,	auroit ;		aurions,	auriez,	auroient.
F Aye,	ayes,	ait ;		ayons,	ayez,	aient.
G Eusse,	eusses,	eût ;		eussions,	eussiez,	eussent.
H	aye,	ait ;		ayons,	ayez,	aient.

* The letter A denotes the present tense of the indicative mood, B the imperfect, C the preterite, D the future, E the conditional, F the present of the subjunctive, G, the preterite, and H the imperative.

N. B. You must apply here, and always in future, the rules for the place of adjectives, and those for the gender and the plural of nouns and adjectives.

A. I have a new ribband; she has a new gown; we have
neuf ruban robe f
 new stockings; you have new ruffles; they have a fine
des bas des manchette beau
 nosegay.—B. I had a good master; she had a good mistress;
bouquet bon maître maîtresse
 we had good brothers; you had good sisters; they had
de frère de sœurs
 good friends.—C. I had a large garden; he had a great
de ami grand jardin
 house; we had two large gardens; you had two great
maison deux
 houses; they had a young turkey for their dinner.—D. I
jeune dindon pour dîner
 shall have a white horse; he will have a white waistcoat;
blanc cheval veste f
 we shall have white curtains; you will have a bad supper;
des rideau mauvais souper
 they will have a bad excuse.—E. I would have delicious
— f un délicieux
 fruit, she would have a delicious pear; we would have a
— poire
 precious jewel; you would have a precious stone; they
précieux joyau pierre
 would have a bloody war.—F. That I may have sincere
sanglant guerre que des —
 friends; that he may have elevated sentiments; that we
ami des élevé —
 may have delightful landscapes; that you may have
des délicieux paysage des
 prepossessing manners; that they may have enlightened
prévenant manière des éclairé
 judges.—G. That I might have a sword, a musket, and
juge épée fusil des
 pistols; that he might have a furnished house; that we
pistolet garni maison
 might have faithful servants; that you might have a
des fidèle domestique
 pretty dressing-room; that they might have a beautiful
joli cabinet de toilette superbe
 drawing-room.—H. Have new gloves; let him have
salon de compagnie s des neuf gant qu'il des
 precious jewels; let us have a skilful gardener; have
précieux bijou habile jardinier pl de
 large buildings; let them have a regular conduct.
grand bâtiment qu'ils régulier conduite f.

Inf. être, to be. G. étant, being. P. été, been.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A	Suis,	es,	est ;	sommes,	êtes,	sont.
B	Etois,	étois,	étoit ;	étions,	étiez,	étoient.
C	Fus,	fus,	fut ;	fûmes,	fûtes,	furent.
D	Serai,	seras,	sera ;	serons,	serez,	seront.
E	Serois,	serois,	seroit ;	serions,	seriez,	seroient.
F	Sois,	sois,	soit ;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.
G	Fusse	fusses,	fût ;	fussions,	fussiez,	fussent.
H	Sois,	soit ;	soyons,	soyez,	soient.	

.. I am sick; thou art young; he is unhappy; she is
malade *jeune* *malheureux*
 unhappy; we are laborious; you are modest; they are
—rieux *—te*

lazy.—B. I was prudent; she was prudent; we were dis-
pareseux *—* *—*

creet; you were studious; they were jealous; your sisters
cret *—dieux* *jaloux* *sœurs*

were jealous.—C. I was his intimate friend; she was my
—me *ami*

greatest enemy; we were generous; you were ungrateful;
plus grand ennemi *généreux* *ingrat*

they were cruel; your daughters were cruel.—D. I shall be
— *filles*

a brave soldier; he will be a handsome man; she will be a
— soldat ** bel homme **

handsome woman; we will be faithful to our country; you
femme *fidèle* *pays*

will be in continual fears; they will be our mortal
dans des *—nuel crainte f* *—tel*

enemies.—E. I should be ready; she would be trouble-
ennemi *prêt* *incom-*

some; we should be very ridiculous; you would be too
mode *très* *—le* *trop*

eager; they would be extremely unpolite.—F. That I may
empresé *extrêmement malhonnête*

be so impatient; that he may be obstinate; that we may
si *—* *entété*

be unreasonable; that you may be humane and generous;
déraisonnable *humain* *généreux*

that they may be guilty.—G. That I might be grateful;
coupable *reconnoissant*

that she might be careful; that we might be attentive; that
soigneux *—tif*

you might be credulous; that they might be inconsiderate.
—le *indiscret*

—H. Be benevolent; let him be firm and courageous; let
s bienfaisant qu'il *ferme* *—geux*

us be reserved; be economical and temperate; let them be
réserve pl *économe* *sobre* *qu'ils*
 kind and indulgent.
doux *compatissant.*

THE TWELVE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parl-er, to speak. G. parl-ant. Part. parl-é*

Singular.			Plural.			
	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Parl	-e,	es,	e ;	ons,	ez,	ent.
B Parl	-ois,	ois,	oit ;	ions,	iez,	oient
C Parl	-ai,	as,	a ;	âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
D Parl-e	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Parl-e	-rois,	rois,	roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Parl	-e,	es,	e ;	ions, ^l	iez,	ent.
G Parl	-asse,	asses,	ât ;	assions,	assiez	assent.
H -	Parl	-e,	e ;	ons,	ez,	ent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *er*.

REMARK 1st. In verbs ending in *ger* the *e* is not suppressed in those tenses where the *g* is to be followed by *a* or *o*, in order to preserve to *g* its soft pronunciation; as, *mangeant*, *jugeons*, *jè négligeai*.

2dly. In verbs ending in *cer*, we put, for the same reason, a cedilla under *c*, when followed by *a* or *o*; as *suçant*, *plaçons*, *j'effaçai*.

3dly. In verbs ending in *oyer* and *uyer*, the *y* is changed into *i* before a mute *e*; as, *j'emploie*, *il essuie*, *j'appuierai*, *il nettoieroit*.

To conjugate a verb upon another, is to make the final of every tense and person of one verb, in perfect rhyme with the verb upon which it is conjugated. To make this rhyme perfect, consider the infinitive as the root of verbs from which all tenses are formed; and change for any person the same letters in all verbs of the same conjugation; thus, as *parler* makes *parlant*, *parlé*, *je parle*, *je parlois*;

* The pupil must repeat the English words, which answer to every tense and person of the French verbs. This will be an easy task, if he remember, that *to* is the mark of the infinitive, *was*, and the gerund, is the mark of the imperfect, *shall* or *will*, of the future, *would*, *could*, or *should*, of the conditional, *may*, of the present of the subjunctive, *might*, of the preterite, and *let*, of the imperative.

chanter will make *chantant*, *chanté*, je chante, je chantois ; and so on for all other tenses and persons without any exception.

A. I love my father ; thou adorest God ; he alarms the
aimer père —rer Dieu —mer
 country ; she dances very well ; we announce good news ;
pays —ser très-bien annoncer de nouvelles
 you water the garden ; they attack the enemy.—B. I did
arroser jardin attaquer ennemi
 sweep the school ; he did warm the bed ; she did embroider
balayer école bassiner lit broder
 her gown ; we did seal the letter ; you did begin your
robe f cacheter lettre f commencer
 exercise ; they did condemn my conduct.—C. I rewarded
thème m condamner conduite f récompenser
 the servant ; he considered the question ; she comforted her
domestique m considérer — consoler
 mother ; we satisfied our master ; you corrected the faults ;
contenter maître corriger faute
 they unsealed the letter.—D. I will decide the question ; he
décacheter lettre f décider —
 will declare war ; she will breakfast with us ; we will dis-
déclarer la guerre déjeuner avec dés-
 arm the wicked ; you will undeceive my sister ; they will
armer méchants détromper sœur
 defer the punishment.—E. I would frequent good company ;
différer punition fréquenter la compagnie
 he would engrave my arms ; she would humble your pride ;
graver armes humilier orgueil
 we would print a grammar ; you would forget injuries ;
imprimer grammaire f oublier les —re
 they would reform their conduct.—F. That I may give this
réformer donner
 plaything to my sister ; that he may propose a salutary
joujou sœur —ser —taire
 advice ; that we may admire the beauty of that landscape ;
avis —rer beauté paysage
 that you may think of my misfortunes ; that they may
penser à malheur
 forget an essential circumstance.—G. That I might surmount
oublier —tiel circonstance surmonter
 the obstacles ; that he might reinforce his party ; that we
— renforcer parti
 might shut the shutters ; that you might begin that
fermer volet commencer
 charming history ; that they might protect that bad man.—
—mant histoire protéger méchant homme
 H. Sacrifice thy interest to the public good ; let him unravel
s intérêt bien qu'il débrouiller

that business; let us finish this book; appease his anger;
affaire f achever livre m appaiser colère f
 let them avoid the danger.
qu'ils évitent

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Ag-ir, to act. G. ag-issant. P. ag-i.

	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Ag	-is,	is,	it;	issons,	issez,	issent.
B Ag-iss	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Ag	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
D Ag-i	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Ag-i	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Ag-iss	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Ag	-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H -	Ag,	-is,	isse;	issons,	issez,	issent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *ir*, not included in the three following conjugations.

A. I shorten the way; he softens the heart; she liberates
l'accourir chemin adoucir cœur pl affranchir
 ner slaves; we remove difficulties; you applaud what he
esclave applanir les —té —dir à ce qu'il
 says; they examine into the question.—B. I did warn your
*dit approfondir * — avertir*

brother of his danger; he did build the fortifications of our
— bâtir —

town; we did banish the wicked from our society; you did
ville bannir méchants société

choose a bad colour; they did convert the impious.—C. I
choisir mauvais couleur —tir impie pl

unfurnished the house; he demolished the wall; we dis-
dégarnir maison démolir mur

obeyed our master; you invaded their country; they filled
obéir à maître envahir pays remplir

the bottle with wine.—D. I shall finish my work to night
bouteille de vin finir ouvrage ce soir

this tree will soon blossom; he will furnish this room; we
arbre fleurir bientôt garnir chambre f

shall succeed in our undertaking; you will enjoy good
réussir dans entreprise jouir d'une

health; they will languish a long while.—E. I would feed
*santé languir * long-temps nourrir*

the chickens; he would betray my interest; we would
poulet trahir intérêt pl

weaken their party; you would roast the hare; they would
affoiblir parti rôtir lièvre m

undergo the punishment.—F. That I may pity his sor-
subir *punition* *compatir à* *cha-*
 rows; that he may embellish his country-seat; that we
grin *embellir* *maison de campagne*
 may soften our enemies; that you may enrich your family;
fléchir *ennemi* *enrichir* *famille*
 that they may sully their glory.—G. That I might cherish
• ternir *gloire* *chérir*
 my relations; that she might soften that unfeeling heart;
parent *attendrir* *insensible cœur*
 that we might reflect on the shortness of life; that you
réfléchir sur *brièveté* *la vie*
 might shudder with horror; that they might submit to an
frémir *d'horreur* *fléchir sous*
 unjust yoke.—H. Punish thy scholars for their inattention;
injuste joug *punir* *écolier de* —
 let him establish wise laws; let us rebuild our farm;
qu'il établir des sage loi *rebâtir* *ferme*
 polish those spoons; let them bless the providence.
polir *cuillère* *qu'ils bénir* —

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Sen-tir, to smell. G. sen-tant. P. sen-ti.

	Je	Singular.			Plural.		
		tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles	
A Sen	-s,	s,	t;	tons,	tez,	tent.	
B Sen-t	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.	
C Sen-t	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	îrent.	
D Sen-ti	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.	
E Sen-ti	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.	
F Sen-t	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.	
G Sen-t	-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.	
H -	Sen	-s,	te;	tons,	tez,	tent.	

Conjugate in the same manner the sixteen following verbs terminated in *mir*, *tir*, *vir*.

consentir, to consent.	se rendormir, to fall asleep again,
démentir, to give the lie.	repartir, to set out again, to reply.
desservir, to clear the table.	se repentir, to repent.
dormir, to sleep.	ressentir, to resent.
endormir, to lull asleep.	ressortir, to go out again.
mentir, to lie.	servir, to serve.
partir, to set out.	sortir, to go out.
pressentir, to foresee.	
redormir, to sleep again.	

A. I consent to the marriage of my son; (she tells a false-
mariage *fil* *mentir*

hood) as often as she opens her mouth; we (set out) for
toutes les fois qu'elle ouvre la bouche *pour*

France to-morrow; you apprehend misfortunes before they
la — demain pressentir les malheurs avant qu'ils
 come; they (lull asleep) the children.—B. I did sleep very
arrivent — enfant

well; he did smell very bad; we did serve our country;
très-mauvais *pays*

you did (go out) before me; they did feel the effects of his
avant moi ressentir effet

anger.—C. I slept very well yesterday; he felt his misfor-
colère f hier sentir mal-

tune; we consented to pay your father; you (went out)
heur à payer père

without my leave; they (went out again) as soon as they
sans permission aussi-tôt qu'ils

were returned.—D. I shall (go out) to-morrow if it be fine
furent revenus — demain s'il fait

weather; he will serve his friend; we shall smell the dinner
temps ami diner

when it is ready; you will consent (to go there); they will
quand il sera prêt à y aller

(set out) to-morrow for London.—E. I would contradict
pour Londres démentir

that report; he would sleep immediately; we should injure
rapport sur-le-champ vous desservir

more than serve you; I thought you would (set
plus que nous ne vous servir E^e croyois que

out again) before him; the children would sleep.—F. That
avant lui enfant

I may consent to that bargain; that he may belie his
marché démentir

character; that we may (clear the table) before we (go out);
caractère m avant que F

that you may sleep all night; that they may wheedle that
toute la nuit endormir

credulous man by vain promises.—G. That I might (set
credulè par de — promesse

out) sooner than I thought; that he might (tell a false-
plus tôt que je ne pensois

hood) designedly; that we might foresee your designs; that
de dessein prémédité dessein

you might serve me with more zeal; that they might feel
avec plus de zèle sentir

the horror of their situation.—H. (Be sensible) of all my good-
l'horreur — sentir toute bonté

ness to thee; let him (sleep again) for a few hours;
envers toi qu'il — quelques heures

let us (go out again) (as soon as possible); consent to be
au plus tôt

miserable rather than to offend God ; let them (go out) when
 — *plutôt que d'offenser Dieu qu'ils* *quand*
 they will.
voudront.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Off-rir, to offer. G. off-rant. P. off-ert.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A	Off-r	-e,	es,	e ;	ons,	ez, ent.
B	Off-r	-ois,	ois,	oit ;	ions,	iez, oient.
C	Off-r	-is,	is,	it ;	îmes,	îtes, irent.
D	Off-ri	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez, ront.
E	Off-ri	-rois,	rois,	roit ;	rions,	riez, roient.
F	Off-r	-e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez, ent.
G	Off-r	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	issions,	issiez, issent.
	Off-r	-e,	e ;	ons,	ez,	ent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *frir*, *vrir*.

A. I offer my services to your father ; my cousin suffers
 — *m souffrir*
 (very much) ; we discover your design ; they open the
beaucoup découvrir dessein ouvrir
 window.—B. I did suffer with patience ; he did offer too
fenêtre f avec — trop
 little ; we did (open a little) the door ; you did undervalue
peu entr'ouvrir porte f mésoffrir
 that stuff too much ; they did renew all the wounds of my
trop de cette étoffe rouvrir toutes plaie
 heart.—C. I discovered his malice ; he suffered with much
cœur — f avec beaucoup de
 courage ; we offered our assistance to your brother ; you
 — *secours pl frère*
 covered the table with money ; they (covered again) the
couvrir — f d'argent recouvrir
 bed.—D. I shall suffer more than you think ; he will dis-
lit plus que vous ne pensez
 cover the fraud ; we will open our heart to our father ; they
fraude f cœur
 will offer a great sum of money.—E. I would discover the
grand somme argent
 snare ; he would cover that man with filth ; we should
piège d'ordure
 (open again) the shop ; you would (cover again) this book ;
rouvrir boutique f recouvrir livre m
 they would (open a little) the window.—F. That I may dis-
fenêtre f

cover the plot formed against me; that he may offer a great
complot formé contre

sum for that land; that we may suffer with patience; that
somme de terre avec —

you may open your heart to your friends; that they may
cœur ami

(open a little) their eyes.—G. That I might (open again) that
les yeux

trunk; that she might discover all his perversity; that we
malle toute —té

might suffer your ill treatment; that you might offer
mauvais traitement

to (set off) with him; that they might cover him with con-
de partir avec lui de

fusion.—H. (Cover again) this pot; let him suffer without
— s — qu'il sans

complaining; let us uncover the roof of my house; (open
se plaindre découvrir toit maison

again) the coach; let them offer my thanks to the minister,
carrosse qu'ils remerciement —tre.

FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Tenir, to hold. G. tenant. P. tenu

Singular.

Plural.

	Je	tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles
A	T	-iens,	iens,	ient;	enons,	enez, iennent.
B	T-en	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez, oient.
C	T	-ins,	ins,	int;	îmes,	întes, inrent.
D	T-iend	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez, ront.
E	T-iend	-rois,	rois,	roit;	riens,	riez, roient.
F	T	-ienne,	iennes,	ienne;	enions,	eniez, iennent.
G	T	-insse,	insses,	int;	inssions,	inssiez, inssent.
H	-	T	iens,	ienne;	enons;	enez, iennent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *enir*.

A. I hold my book; she comes to see us every fortnight;
*livre m venir * voir tous les quinze jours*
 we agree with you that he was in the wrong; you become
*convenir qu'il avoit * * tort devenir*
 an honest man; these horses belong to my father.—B. I did
** honnête cheval appartenir*
 maintain the fact; he did obtain a good place; we did re-
soutenir fait obtenir — reve-
 turn home; you did detain my son; they did retain a part
nir à la maison détenir fils retenir partie

of the money.—c. I disowned what he said; he maintained
argent disconvenir de ce qu'il dit —tenir
discipline in the army; we restrained the mob; you inter-
la —f dans armée contenir populace inter-
posed in the affair; they kept their promises.—d. I shall
venir dans affaire tenir promesse
obtain the consent of the king; she will return to-night
obtenir consentement roi revenir ce soir
from town; we shall attain our end; you will support your
de la ville parvenir à but soutenir
rank; they will return in a few days.—e. I would maintain
rang revenir sous peu de jours entretenir
my family; he would become a learned man; you would
*famille devenir * savant*
detain the captain; they would obtain what they ask.—
détenir capitaine obtenir ce qu'il demander
f. That I may relieve the wants of that unfortunate family;
subvenir aux besoins malheureux famille
that he may deceive his judges; that we may prevent the
circonvenir juges prévenir
bad effects of the prejudices of their infancy; that you
mauvais effet préjugé enfance
may agree that my reasons are better than yours; that they
raison meilleur que
may attain the highest pitch of glory.—g. That I might
parvenir à plus haut comble m gloire
obtain better terms from him; that she might become
de condition de
more prudent; that we might sustain the weight of
plus — soutenir poids
affliction with courage; that you might (come back) be-
l' — avec — revenir a-
fore the end of this month; that they might detain him
vant fin mois retenir
till the beginning of next week.—h. Keep thy
jusqu'au commencement la prochain semaine f tenir
word; let him become learned; let us prevent the mischiefs
parole f qu'il instruit mal pl
which could proceed from his imprudence: confess that
pourroient provenir de — convenir que
you return too late; let them support the part of the
A trop tard qu'ils soutenir parti
innocent.
— pl

SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Rec-evoir, to receive. G. rec-evant. P. reç-u.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elle</i>
A Reç	-ois,	ois,	oit ;	evons,	evez,	oivent.
B Rec-ev	-ois,	ois,	oit ;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Reç	-us,	us,	ut ;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
D Rec-ev	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Rec-ev	-rois,	rois,	roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Reç	-oive,	oives,	oive ;	evions,	eviez,	oivent.
G Reç	-usse,	usses,	ût ;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
H -	Reç	-ois,	oive ;	evons,	evez,	oivent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *evoir*.

A. I perceive how that has happened ; he perceives your
concevoir comment cela est arrivé *apercevoir*
 intention ; we owe ten pounds to your father ; you receive
devoir dix livre
 a letter ; they perceive the danger.—B. I did receive my
lettre f *apercevoir* — *percevoir*
 revenues ; he did (owe still) a great sum ; we did frustrate
—nu *redevoir* *somme* *décevoir*
 his hopes ; we did owe two thousand pounds ; you did
espérance *devoir* *mille* *livre*
 perceive his atrocity ; they did receive his compliments
apercevoir *—le* —
 with contempt.—C. I received a visit from your sister ;
mépris *visite f* *de* *sœur*
 she conceived great hopes ; we perceived a thief ; you re-
concevoir de *apercevoir* *voleur*
 ceived (yesterday) a great sum of money ; they conceived a
hier *somme argent*
 great horror for his conduct.—D. I shall receive a letter
horreur de *conduite f* *lettre f*
 from France in a few days ; he will owe me two hundred
sous peu de jours *cents*
 pounds at the death of my mother ; we shall receive a re-
livre à *mort* *ré-*
 ward for that brilliant action ; you will easily perceive
compense pour cette brillant — *apercevoir aisément*
 if they be guilty ; they will conceive a new project.—E. I
s'ils *A coupables* *nouveau projet**
 would receive his advice ; he should write to his brother ;
avis *devoir écrire* *frère*
 we should perceive if he said the truth ; you ought to do
apercevoir s'il dit *vérité* *devoir ** *faire*

your exercise; they would receive your presents with joy.

—P. That I may perceive the defects of that work; that he
thème présent joie
 may owe more than he possesses; that we may conceive a
défauts ouvrage

sentence which perhaps the author himself does not con-
plus qu'il ne posséder A

ceive; that you may receive unjust taxes; that they
*phrase f que peut-être auteur lui-même * ne*

may receive that company with great respect.—G. That I
A pas percevoir des injuste impôt

might (owe still) a trifle; that he might deceive his
compagnie grand — bagatelle décevoir

friend by fine promises; that we might owe respect to
par de beau promesse du —

his misfortunes; that they might conceive the depth of
malheur profondeur

his plan; that you might perceive the castle (from such a
— château de si

distance).—H. Receive my thanks for all thy kindness;
loin remerciement de toutes bonté pl

let him receive the interest of that money; let us conceive
qu'il percevoir intérêt argent

the importance of our duty; receive that stranger with
— devoir étranger

affection; let them conceive how far their imprudence will
— qu'ils jusqu'où —

take them.

mener D

SEVENTH CONJUGATION

Pl-aire, to please. G. pl-aisant. P. pl-u.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Pl-ai	-s,	s,	t;	sons,	sez,	sent.
B Pl-ais	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Pl	-us,	us,	ût;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
D Pl-ai	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Pl-ai	-rois,	rois,	roit;	riens,	riez,	roient.
F Pl-ais	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Pl	-usse,	usses,	ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
H -	Pl-ai	-s,	se;	sons,	sez,	sent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *aire*.

A. I please all the family; he (is silent) when I speak;
à tout famille se taire quand A

we (are displeased) in that situation; you (take pleasure) in
nous déplaire dans — vous plaire à
 contradicting; they delight in their works.—B. I did
contredire se complaire ouvrage
 remain silent) against my wish; he did please every body;
me taire contre gré à tout le monde
 we did displease the governor; you did delight in your
déplaire au gouverneur vous complaire
 vices; they did conceal the truth.—C. I (was pleased) with
— taire vérité me plaire à
 doing that; he displeased by his haughtiness; we (re-
faire cela arrogance
 mained silent) (in spite of ourselves); you displeased your
nous taire malgré nous à
 uncle; they delighted in tormenting me.—D. (I will be
oncle se plaire à me tourmenter me
 silent); he will please the king; we shall (be pleased) with
taire au roi nous plaire avec
 him; you will displease my mother; these books will please
lui déplaire à livre
 me.—E. (I would be pleased) with reading; his friend would
me plaire à lire ami
 displease me; we would conceal that event; you would
l'événement
 (be pleased) with talking with him; his manners would
vous plaire à converser avec manières
 please you.—F. That I may please by my condescension;
par — dance
 that she may displease by her spirit of contradiction;
esprit —
 that we may conceal the true motives of his conduct;
vrai motif conduite f
 that you may delight in tormenting every one; that
vous plaire à tourmenter tout le monde
 their answers may displease every virtuous man.—G. That
réponse f à tout vertueux
 I might (remain silent) when I am (so much) offended; that
me quand tellement outragé
 my son might please you; that we might displease by our
fil
 sincerity; that you might delight in your faults; that
—té vous complaire défauts
 those beautiful descriptions might please at every time.—H.
superbe en tout temps
 Please by thy submission; let him conceal the greatest
soumission qu'il plus grand
 part of what he has heard; let us (be pleased) in cultivating
partie ce qu' A entendu plaire nous à —ver
 sciences; (hold your tongues).
les — taire vous

EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Crai-ndre, to fear. G. crai-gnant. P. crai-nt.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Crai	-ns,	ns,	nt;	gnons,	gnez,	gnent.
B Crai-gn	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Crai-gn	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
D Crai-nd	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Crai-nd	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Crai-gn	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Crai-gn	-isse,	isses,	it;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H -	Crai	-ns,	gne;	gnons,	gnez,	gnent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *aindre*, *eindre*, and *oindre*.

A. I fear my master; she extinguishes the fire; we pity the unfortunate; you paint very well; they complain of every body.—B. I did fear your anger; he did pity my sister; we did dye the silk; you did constrain my cousin to sell his house; they did paint a shipwreck.—C. I feigned to be sick; he transgressed the laws of his country; we joined hands; you (put out) the candles; they compelled their son to learn mathematics.—D. I will enjoin the servant to stay at home; she will transgress your orders; we will paint our room; you will pity their folly; they will fear to be discovered.—E. I would compel the enemy to fight; he would fear to displease his master; we would feign (to believe them); you would paint very well; they would infringe the constitution.—F. That I may join my efforts to yours; that her aunt may fear

éteindre *feu* *plaindre*
malheureux pl *peindre très-bien* *se plaindre*
colère f
sœur *teindre soie* *contraindre* *à*
vendre maison *nauffrage* *feindre*
d'être malade *enfreindre* *lois* *pays*
joindre les mains *éteindre* *chandelle* *contraindre*
fils à apprendre les mathématiques *enjoindre*
au domestique de rester à la maison
ordre *chambre*
folie *d'être découverts*
ennemi à combattre *de déplaire à*
de les croire
très-bien *enfreindre* —
tante

the effects of her levity; that we may compel him to
 alter ^{effet} his conduct; that you may pity his fate; that
^{légèreté} ^{changer de conduite} they may pity his misfortune.—G. That I might join my
^{sort} opinion to that of the other judges; that he might draw
 — ^{celle} your picture; that we might feign to be satisfied with
^{autre juges} ^{peindre} him; that you might fear those spectres; that they might
^{portrait} ^{de content de} dye that cloth in black.—H. Fear God during all thy life;
^{étouffe f en noir} let him paint his house anew; let us enjoin ^{pendant} our children
^{qu'il} to respect (old people); compel him to follow your advice;
^{maison à neuf} ^à ^{enfant} ^{de respecter les vieillards} ^{savoir} let them fear my anger;
^{qu'ils} ^{colère f}

NINTH CONJUGATION.

Conn-ôtre, to know. G. conn-oissant. P. conn-u.

Singular.

Plural.

	Je	tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles
A	Conn-oi -s	s,	t;	ssons,	ssez,	ssent.
B	Conn-oiss -ois,	ois,	oît;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C	Conn -us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
D	Conn-oît -rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E	Conn-oît -rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F	Conn-oiss -e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G	Conn -usse,	usses,	ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
H	- Conn-oi -s,	sse;	ssons,	ssez,	ssent.	

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *ôtre*, and *ôtre*.

A. I know your father; he forgets his friends; we increase our income; you appear very dull; they appear and disappear in a moment.—B. I did (entertain myself) with that hope; his mare did graze in the park; we did appear before the judges; you did (not recognize) your hand—
^{méconnoître} ^{amis} ^{ac-}
^{croître} ^{revenu} ^{paroître très-triste}
^{disparoître dans} — ^{me repaître} ^{de}
^{espoir} ^{jument f} ^{pâître} ^{parc} ^{comparoître}
^{devant} ^{juges} ^{méconnoître} ^{écri-}

writing; they did (appear again) upon the stage.—c. I
ture reparoître sur théâtre m
 knew your sister when she spoke; she knew the world
reconoître sœur quand parler c monde m
 before you; we appeared in public; you appeared
avant en public
 dissatisfied; they knew their horse again.—d. I will know
*mécontent reconnoître cheval **
 (the whole business); she will appear handsomer; we shall
toute l'affaire plus beau
 grow this year; they will know your father and mother.—
croître année père votre mère
 e. I would acknowledge your innocence; she would grow
reconoître
 every day, if she were not ill; we would know the forces
tout les jours n'étoit pas malade
 of the enemy; you would appear older than I; they would
ennemi plus âgé que moi
 know the truth.—f. That I may know my duty; that she
vérité devoir
 may acknowledge her errors; that we may appear before
erreur comparoître devant
 that tribunal; that you may disappear for some time; that
pour quelque temps
 they may know me.—g. That I might know him after an
reconoître après
 absence of several years; that he might (not acknowledge)
plusieurs année méconoître
 his friends since his preferment; that we might increase our
ami depuis agrandissement
 possessions; that you might (appear again) in your
dans
 (native country); that these trees might grow rapidly.—
patrie arbre rapidement
 h. Acknowledge thy imprudence; let her appear more
qu'elle plus
 reserved; let us increase every day our reputation
réserve tous les jours
 by new acts of courage; know all the extent of your
par de nouveau acte — toute étendue
 folly; let them appear joyful and satisfied.
folie qu'ils joyeux content.

TENTH CONJUGATION.

Instr-uire, to instruct. G instr-uisant. P. instr-uit.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A Instr-ui	-s,	s,	t ;	sons,	sez,	sent.
B Instr-uis	-ois,	ois,	oit ;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Instr-uïs	-is,	is,	it ;	imes,	ites,	irent.
D Instr-ui	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Instr-ui	-rois,	rois,	roit ;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Instr-uis	-e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Instr-uis	-isse,	isses,	it ;	issions,	issiez	issent.
H -	instr-ui,	-s,	se ;	sons,	sez,	sent

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *uire*.

A. I instruct youth; she leads them into error; we
la jeunesse induire en erreur
 translate English into French; you seduce the ignorant
traduire l'Anglois en François séduire —pl
 by your discourses; these trees produce good apples every
par discours arbres —duire de pomme tous
 year.—B. I did introduce a new custom; he did destroy the
les ans —duire nouveau coutume f détruire
 wall; we did build a ship; you did conduct the enterprise;
mur construire vaisseau conduire entreprise
 they did produce their title.—C. I deducted the expences;
titre déduire dépense
 he behaved very well; we translated their work; you
se conduire très-bien ouvrage
 seduced the witnesses; they led young people into error
témoin induire les jeunes gens en erreur
 —D. I shall convey the water into the meadow; he will
conduire eau dans prairie
 construct a palace; we will reduce your brother to silence;
construire palais réduire frère au —
 you will instruct their children; they will destroy the
enfant
 fortifications.—E. I would translate Italian; he would in-
— l'Italien
 troduce my son to the court; we would reconduct
fils cour —duire
 you home; you should plaster the wall; they would
à la maison enduire mur
 produce a good effect.—F. That I may dress that meat; that
effet cuire viande f

he may refuse his brother; that we may hurt your interests;
éconduire frère nuire à intérêt
 that you may (show home) that lady; that these diamonds
reconduire dame diamant
 may shine in the dark.—G. That I might (produce again)
reluire dans obscurité reproduire
 the papers of my family; that he might (plaster anew) the
papier famille rendre
 outside of his house; that we might introduce a new
extérieur maison nouveau
 custom; that you might instruct youth in true
coutume la jeunesse dans la vrai
 religion; that they might seduce by their modest exterior.
modeste extérieur

—H. Translate thy exercises more literally; let him deduct
thème plus littéralement qu'il
 at least the half of that sum; let us manage our affairs
au moins moitié somme conduire affaire
 with more circumspection; introduce that history in your
avec plus de circonspection histoire dans
 new work; let them destroy all obstacles.
nouvel ouvrage qu'ils tous les —

ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Ven-dre, to sell. G. ven-dant. P. ven-du.

Singular.

Plural.

	Je	tu	il or elle	nous	vous	ils or elles
A Ven	-ds,	ds,	d;	dons,	dez,	dent.
B Ven-d	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C Ven-d	-is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
D Ven-d	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E Ven-d	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F Ven-d	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G Ven-d	-isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H - Ven	ds,	de;	dons,	dez,	dent.	

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *andre*, *endre*, *erdre*, and *ordre*.

A. I expect company to-day; he answers impudently;
attendre compagnie aujourd'hui répondre impudemment
 we hear a great noise; you defend your country; they spill
entendre bruit défendre pays répandre
 human blood.—B. I did suspend my judgment; that dog
le humain sang —dre jugement chien
 did bite every body; we did spread terror every where; you
mordre tout le monde répandre la terreur partout

did aim in vain at that place; they did (take down) their
prétendre en — à — détendre

bed.—c. I sold my house; he condescended to her desires;
lit —dre désir

we melted the lead; you lost your time yesterday; they
fondre plomb perdre temps hier

stretched their arms.—d. I will answer in few words; he
tendre les bras répondre en peu de mots

will hear what they say; we shall lose our friends; you
entendre ce qu' disent perdre ami

will shear your sheep; they will sell their country-house.
tondre brebis pl maison de campagne

—e. I would confound his pride; he would wait for an
*confondre orgueil attendre **

answer; we would defend that honest man (at the hazard
réponse f honnête homme au péril

of our life; you would render justice to every body; they
vie rendre à tout le monde

would hang the rebels.—f. That I may wait his return with
pendre rebelle attendre retour avec

impatience; that he may confound these notions one with
— l'une

another; that we may waste our time about trifles; that
l'autre perdre temps à des bagatelle

you may throw the graces of expression into your speeches;
répandre — l' — dans discours

that they may sell their incense to the pride of a blockhead.
encens orgueil sot

—g. That I might aim at an honest end; that he might
tendre à honnête but

(come down) at the first order; that we might hear the
descendre à premier ordre m

music of the new opera; that you might recompose a
musique f nouvel — refondre

work so full of errors; that they might correspond with
ouvrage plein erreur —pondre

their relations.—h. Hear their justification; let him (come
parent s — qu'il

down) immediately; let us expect our happiness from our-
sur-le-champ attendre bonheur nous-

selves; ye sovereigns, make the people happy; let them
*mêmes * souverain rendre peuple m heureux qu'ils*

answer your letters.
à lettre

TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

Ecr-ire, to write. G. écr-ivant. P. écr-it.

Singular.

Plural.

	<i>J'</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A E'cr	-is,	is,	it;	ivons,	ivez,	ivent.
B E'cr-iv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ions,	iez,	oient.
C E'cr-iv	-is,	is,	it;	imes,	ites,	irent.
D E'cr-i	-rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.
E E'cr-i	-rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.
F E'cr-iv	-e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.
G E'cr-iv	-isse,	isses,	it;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
H -	E'cr	-is,	ive;	ivons,	ivez,	ivent.

Conjugate in the same manner all the regular verbs terminated in *crire*.

A. I transcribe my exercise; he inscribes his name in a register; we subscribe for your work; you prescribe more than I can do; they circumscribe his authority in narrow limits.—B. I did write every day to my sister, who did answer me very seldom; we did transcribe all your letters; you did consent to every thing he said; they did describe a horrid tempest.—C. I wrote last week to my attorney, who answered me yesterday; we proscribed every delay in that affair; you inscribed the names of persons unknown to every one; they proscribed all their enemies.—D. I will prescribe nothing without your advice; he will subscribe to (every thing) you wish; we will transcribe his memorial; you will (write again) your exercise; they will describe what they have seen.—E. I would transcribe all that work; he would (write again) his letter; we would proscribe vicious people from our society; you would write better

—*crire* *thème* m —*crire* *nom* dans
—*tre* m *souscrire* pour *ouvrage* *prescrire* plus
que ne puis faire *circonscrire* *autorité* dans *d'étroites*
limites *tous les jours* *sœur*
récrire *très-rarement* *lettre* f
souscrire à tout ce qu'il disoit *décrire*
horrible tempête f *la semaine dernière* • *procureur*
récrire *hier* —*crire* tout *délai*
affaire f *nom* *personnes inconnues* de
tout le monde *ennemi* *ne*
rien *sans* *avis*
tout ce que *désirer* A *mémoire* m
récrire *thème*
ce qu' A vu *ouvrage*
les gens vicieux *société* *mieux*

if you were more attentive; they would order their scholars
si B —tif prescrire à écolier
 to study more attentively.—F. That I may describe all the
d'étudier —ment tous
 charms of that beautiful landscape; that he may circum-
charme m superbe paysage
 scribe our power; that we may write upon that subject;
pouvoir sur sujet
 that you may inscribe all the principal inhabitants among
tous — habitant parmi
 your subscribers; that they may prescribe unjust orders.
souscripteur des injuste ordre.
 —G. That I might proscribe all vain splendor from that
— pompe f
 ceremony; that she might (write again) her novel; that we
cérémonie roman
 might accept the conditions they prescribe; that you might
souscrire à — qu'ils A
 transcribe anew all the regular verbs of your grammar;
de nouveau tous régulier verbe m grammare
 that they might write in a legible manner.—H. Inscribe my
de lisible manière
 name immediately after thine; let him describe more
nom —ment après qu'il plus
 clearly the circumstances of that event; let us circum-
clairement circonstances événement
 scribe our wishes in the limits of uprightness; transcribe
désir la droiture
 two or three pages of that book; let them proscribe every
deux ou trois — livre m qu'il toute
 affectation from their writings.
— écrit

EXERCISE upon the COMPOUND TENSES of the REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

When a verb is preceded by the auxiliary *to have* or *to be*, it is always in the participle; as, *j'ai parlé, je suis puni.*

When a participle is preceded by any tense of the verb *être*, it agrees in French with the noun antecedent in gender and number, few cases excepted; as, *mon frère est estimé, ma sœur est estimée; mes frères sont estimés, mes sœurs sont estimées.* When the participle comes after any tense of the verb *avoir*, it is only declinable in French in the cases mentioned in rule 143. In the following exercise it will be declinable after the verb *être*, and indeclinable after *avoir*. The feminine and plural of participles are formed like those of adjectives, p. 20.

The participles of the twelve regular conjugations are formed from the infinitive, by changing the final as follows:

1. parl-er	-é	to speak.	7. pl-aire	-u	to please.
2. ag-ir	-i	act.	8. crain-dre	-t	fear.
3. sent-ir	-i	smell.	9. conn-ôtre	-u	know.
4. off-rir	-ert	offer.	10. instrui-re	-t	instruct.
5. ten-ir	-u	hold.	11. vend-re	-u	sell.
6. rec-evoir	-u	receive.	12. écri-re	-t	write.

N. B. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, &c. which in the following exercises are put before the verbs, denote of what conjugation they are.

I have spoken to the queen of England; the law is abolished; we have slept ¹ very ² well; we have (found out) his fraud; his fraud is found out; we are come to dine with you; you have received a letter; the letters are received; we have concealed that affair; that affair was concealed; we have (put out) the candles; the candles are put out; we have understood their intentions; their intentions were known; you have translated many English books into French; many English books are translated into French; I have sold my horses; my horses are sold; he has written his answer; his answer is written; she has sung a pretty song; the song was well sung; I had built a house; my house was built; we had foreseen these misfortunes; you had served your friends; your friends were gone; they have offered a reward; a reward was offered; they had obtained his favour; his pardon was obtained; we had perceived the enemies; the enemies were perceived; I have known your sister; your sisters are well known; we have reduced your sisters to silence; your sisters were re-

duced to silence; you have sealed the letter; the letter
A 1 cacher lettre f
 is sealed; they had filled the bottles; the bottles were filled;
A B 2 remplir bouteille B
 they had detained my sisters; my sisters were detained;
B 5 détenir C
 we have joined the two parts together; the two parts are
A 8 joindre partie ensemble A
 joined together; they had acknowledged my innocence;
B 9 reconnoître —
 my innocence was acknowledged; we have introduced this
C A 10 — duire
 custom; this custom was introduced; you have corrupted
coutume f C A 10 séduire
 the witnesses; the witnesses are corrupted; they had
témoin A B
 answered to my questions; your letters were answered.
11 répondre — lettre f c répondre

Several Modes of Conjugating VERBS.

A verb may be conjugated with affirmation, negation, interrogation and pronouns as follows:

RULE 1. With Affirmation.—By putting the nominative before the verb in French, as in English. Example.

Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speake</i>
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>
elle parle,	<i>she speaks.</i>
mon frère parle,	<i>my brother speaks.</i>
ma sœur parle,	<i>my sister speaks.</i>
nous parlons,	<i>we speak.</i>
vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>
ils, or elles parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>
mes frères parlent,	<i>my brothers speak.</i>
mes sœurs parlent,	<i>my sisters speak.</i>

RULE 2. With Negation.—By putting the particle *ne* between the nominative and the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the verb. Example.

Je ne parle pas,	<i>I do not speak.</i>
tu ne parles pas,	<i>thou dost not speak.</i>
il ne parle pas,	<i>he does not speak.</i>
elle ne parle pas,	<i>she does not speak.</i>
mon frère ne parle pas,	<i>my brother does not speak.</i>
ma sœur ne parle pas,	<i>my sister does not speak.</i>
nous ne parlons pas,	<i>we do not speak.</i>
vous ne parlez pas,	<i>you do not speak.</i>

ils or elles ne parlent pas,	<i>they do not speak.</i>
mes frères ne parlent pas,	<i>my brothers do not speak.</i>
mes sœurs ne parlent pas,	<i>my sisters do not speak.</i>

RULE 3. *With interrogation.*—By putting the nominative after the verb, if it be a pronoun. Example.

Parlé-je?	<i>Do I speak?</i>
parles-tu?	<i>dost thou speak?</i>
parle-t-il?	<i>does he speak?</i>
parle-t-elle?	<i>does she speak?</i>
parlons-nous?	<i>do we speak?</i>
parlez-vous?	<i>do you speak?</i>
parlent-ils?	<i>do they speak?</i>
parlent-elles?	

N. B. When the first person ends with a mute *e*, it is changed into an acute *é*; when the third person singular ends with a vowel, a *t* between two hyphens is placed between the verb and the pronoun.

When the nominative of the verb is a substantive, it is placed before the verb, and the pronoun *il*, or *elle*, for the singular, *ils*, or *elles*, for the plural is put after. Example.

Mon frère parle-t-il?	<i>Does my brother speak?</i>
ma sœur parle-t-elle?	<i>does my sister speak?</i>
mes frères parlent-ils?	<i>do my brothers speak?</i>
mes sœurs parlent-elles?	<i>do my sisters speak?</i>

When an interrogative sentence is also negative *ne* is placed at the beginning of the sentence, or after the substantive when there is one, and *pas* after the verb and the pronoun. Example.

Ne parlé-je pas?	<i>Do I not speak?</i>
ne parles-tu pas?	<i>dost thou not speak?</i>
ne parle-t-il pas?	<i>does he not speak?</i>
ne parle-t-elle pas?	<i>does she not speak?</i>
mon frère ne parle-t-il pas?	<i>does not my brother speak?</i>
ma sœur ne parle-t-elle pas?	<i>does not my sister speak?</i>
ne parlons-nous pas?	<i>do we not speak?</i>
ne parlez-vous pas?	<i>do you not speak?</i>
ne parlent-ils pas?	<i>do they not speak?</i>
ne parlent-elles pas?	
mes frères ne parlent-ils pas?	<i>do not my brothers speak?</i>
mes sœurs ne parlent-elles pas?	<i>do not my sisters speak?</i>

RULE 4. *With governed Pronouns.*—By putting the governed pronoun immediately before the verb, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative. Example.

1. *Affirmative sentence.*

Je lui parle,
tu lui parles,
il lui parle,
elle lui parle,
mon frère lui parle,
ma sœur lui parle,
nous lui parlons,
vous lui parlez,
ils or elles lui parlent,
mes frères lui parlent,
mes sœurs lui parlent,

*I speak to him.
thou speakest to him.
he speaks to him.
she speaks to him.
my brother speaks to him.
my sister speaks to him.
we speak to him.
you speak to him.
they speak to him.
my brothers speak to him.
my sisters speak to him.*

2. *Negative sentence.*

Je ne lui parle pas,
tu ne lui parles pas,
il ne lui parle pas,
elle ne lui parle pas,
mon frère ne lui parle pas,
ma sœur ne lui parle pas,
nous ne lui parlons pas,
vous ne lui parlez pas,
ils or elles ne lui parlent pas,
mes frères ne lui parlent pas,
mes sœurs ne lui parlent pas,

*I do not speak to him.
thou dost not speak to him.
he does not speak to him.
she does not speak to him.
my brother does not speak to him.
my sister does not speak to him.
we do not speak to him.
you do not speak to him.
they do not speak to him.
my brothers do not speak to him.
my sisters do not speak to him.*

3. *Interrogative sentence.*

Lui parlé-je ?
lui parlez tu ?
lui parle-t-il ?
lui parle-t-elle ?
mon frère lui parle-t-il ?
ma sœur lui parle-t-elle ?
lui parlons-nous ?
lui parlez-vous ?
lui parlent-ils ? }
lui parlent-eiles ? }
mes frères lui parlent-ils ?
mes sœurs lui parlent-elles ?

*Do I speak to him ?
dost thou speak to him ?
does he speak to him ?
does she speak to him ?
does my brother speak to him ?
does my sister speak to him ?
do we speak to him ?
do you speak to him ?
do they speak to him ?
do my brothers speak to him ?
do my sisters speak to him ?*

4. *Interrogative and negative sentence.*

Ne lui parlé-je pas ?
ne lui parles-tu pas ?
ne lui parle-t-il pas ?
ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?
mon frère ne lui parle-t-il pas ?
ma sœur ne lui parle-t-elle pas ?

*Do I not speak to him ?
dost thou not speak to him ?
does he not speak to him ?
does she not speak to him ?
does not my brother speak to him ?
does not my sister speak to him ?*

ne lui parlons-nous pas? do we not speak to him?
 ne lui parlez-vous pas? do you not speak to him?
 ne lui parlent-ils pas? } do they not speak to him?
 ne lui parlent-elles pas? }
 mes frères ne lui parlent-ils pas? do not my brothers speak to him?
 mes sœurs ne lui parlent-elles pas? do not my sisters speak to him?

Observation.—In the compound tenses, you apply these rules with the auxillary *avoir* or *être*, as if there were no other verb, because the participle is put the last; as *j'ai parlé*, *je n'ai pas parlé*, *ai-je parlé?* *je ne lui ai pas parlé*, *ne lui ai-je pas parlé?*

EXERCISE upon the preceding Rules.

N. B. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, have reference to the four rules above.

You know the king; you do not know the king; do you
 1 *connoître* 1 *roi* 2 3
 know the king? you know him; you do not know him; do
 1 4 1 2 4
 you know him? he sells his horse; he does not sell his
 3 4 1 *vendre* 1 *cheval* 2
 horse; does he sell his horse? he does not sell it; does he
 3 1 2 4 *le* 3
 sell it? has he sold it? they are sick; are they sick? they
 4 3 4 *l'* 1 *malade* 3 1
 are not sick; I will give a watch to your son; I will not
 2 1 *donner* *D* *montre* *f* *fils* 1 2
 give a watch to your son; I have given it to your son; I
D 1 *f* 4 *l'* *fils* 1
 have not given it to your son; I do not blame your conduct;
 2 *f* 4 *l'* 1 2 *blâmer* *conduite* *f*
 does she choose a fine colour? we hold him; have you an-
 3 *choisir* *beau* *couleur* 1 *tenir* 4 *le* 3 *ré-*
 spondre — 1 *traduire* *livre* *m*
 answered to their questions? you have translated the book;
 but you have not translated 2 it well 1; do not threaten them;
mais 1 2 4 *l'* *bien* 2 *menacer* *H* 4 *les*
 has he spoken (to them)? we have pacified him; they have
 3 4 *leur* 1 — *fier* 4 *l'* 1
 not pardoned me; do you look for your book? yes, I have
 2 *pardonner* 4 *m'* 3 *chercher* *oui* 1
 lost it; they do not sing well; have you breakfasted? he
perdre 4 *l'* 1 *chanter* 3 *déjeuner* 1
 has not received a letter from his father; I have sent him
 2 *recevoir* *de* *lettre* 1 *envoyer* 4 *lui*
 a book; has he received it? no, sir, he has not received it
 3 4 *l'* *non* *monsieur* 1 2 4.

you do not neglect your friends; have you not neglected
 1 2 *négliger* ami 3 2
 me? the Austrians have not ratified the treaty; but the
 4 *m'* *Autrichiens* 2 —*fier* *traité*
 French will force them to do it; have you decided the
Francois pl *forcer* 4 *les* à *faire* 4 *le* 3 *décider*
 question?

Of the REFLECTED VERBS.

We give the name of *reflected verbs* to all those which have for their subject and object the same person or thing, such as *je m'habille*, I dress myself; *je me repens*, I repent.

Rule 1.—All reflected verbs are conjugated with two pronouns in every tense and person of the indicative and subjunctive moods; thus, *je me*, is used for the first person singular; *tu te* for the second; *il se*, or *elle se*, for the third; *nous nous* for the first plural; *vous vous* for the second; *ils se* or *elles se*, for the third. Example.

Je me lève,
tu te lèves,
il se lève,
elle se lève,
mon frère se lève,
ma sœur se lève,
nous nous levons,
vous vous levez,
ils or elles se lèvent,
mes frères se lèvent,
mes sœurs se lèvent,

I rise.
thou risest.
he rises.
she rises.
my brother rises.
my sister rises.
we rise.
you rise.
they rise.
my brothers rise.
my sisters rise.

Rule 2.—All reflected verbs are conjugated in English with the verb *to have* in their compound tenses, in French with the verb *être*; and then the participle generally agrees with the nominative of the verb. Example.

Je me suis levé,
tu t'es levé,
il s'est levé,
elle s'est levée,
mon frère s'est levé,
ma sœur s'est levée,
nous nous sommes levés,
vous vous êtes levés,
ils se sont levés, }
elles se sont levées, }
mes frères se sont levés,
mes sœurs se sont levées,

I have risen.
thou hast risen.
he has risen.
she has risen.
my brother has risen.
my sister has risen.
we have risen.
you have risen.
they have risen.
my brothers have risen.
my sisters have risen.

Observation.—When you see *se* or *s'* before a verb in the infinitive, it is reflected in French.

**EXERCISE upon the SIMPLE TENSES of the
REFLECTED VERBS.**

A. I abstain from doing it; he (stoops down); we bathe
s'abstenir de le faire *se baisser* *se baigner*
 every summer; you (go to bed) before your brother; they
tous les étés *se coucher avant*
 rebel.—B. I did (nurse myself) (too much); he did
se révolter *s'écouter* *trop*
 mean to travel; we did torment ourselves about
se proposer de voyager *se tourmenter* *pour*
 that affair; you did despair without reason; they did
affaire f *se désespérer sans raison*
 applaud themselves for their folly.—C. I retracted; the river
s'applaudir *de sottisse f* *se rétracter* *rivière*
 overflowed; we distrusted your sister; you (made haste);
se déborder *se défier de* *se dépêcher*
 they were very well.—D. I shall seize upon his fortune:
se porter très-bien *s'emparer de* *— f*
 he will (be eager) to do it; she will (fall asleep); we shall
s'empreser de le faire *s'endormir*
 (grow bold); you will (catch cold); they will (take root);
s'enhardir *s'enrumer* *s'enraciner*
 —E. I would (grow rich); he would discourse with her;
s'enrichir *s'entretenir avec*
 we would rise; you would wonder; they would (fly away);
se lever *s'étonner* *s'envoler*
 the flowers would blow.—F. That I may perceive your
fleurs *s'épanouir* *s'apercevoir de*
 designs; that he may amuse himself at his expence; that
dessein *s'amuser* ** à dépens pl*
 we may incur this danger; that you may (be em-
se précipiter dans *—* *s'oc-*
 ployed) about trifles; that they may (go out) of the
cuper de bagatelle *se détourner*
 right way.—G. That I might yield to his reasons; that
droit chemin *se rendre* *raison*
 he might employ the means I (point out) to him;
se servir de moyen que indiquer A
 that we might (be degraded) in our own eyes; that you
s'avilir *propre*
 might (be proud) of this trifling advantage; that they might
s'enorgueillir *foible avantage*
 (love each other) from their infancy.
s'entr'aimer *depuis enfance*

N. B. The imperative of reflected verbs being conjugated in a different manner, according as it is affirmative or negative, we shall give both.

Affirmatively.

Lève-toi
qu'il se lève
levons-nous
levez-vous
qu'ils se lèvent.

rise (thou)
let him rise.
let us rise.
rise.
let them rise.

Negatively.

Ne te lève pas	<i>do not rise.</i>
qu'il ne se lève pas	<i>let him not rise.</i>
ne nous levons pas	<i>let us not rise.</i>
ne vous levez pas	<i>do not rise.</i>
qu'ils ne se lèvent pas	<i>let them not rise.</i>

H. O man, remember that thou art mortal; do not re-
se souvenir *mortel* *se*
 joice to see thine enemies unhappy; let him (be undeceived);
plaire voir *ennemi malheureux* *se désabuser*
 let her not (go to bed) so early; let us habituate
se coucher *de si bonne heure* *s'habituer*
 ourselves to employment; let us not deceive ourselves;
 * *au travail* *se séduire* *nous-mêmes*
 rest yourself under the shade of this tree; do not
se reposer * *a* *ombre* *arbre*
 interfere in that business; let them (make haste); let them
se mêler de *affaire f* *se dépêcher*
 not behave so ill.
se comporter si mal

EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES of the
REFLECTED VERBS.

A. I have (stolen away); she has (fainted away); we
s'esquiver *s'évanouir*
have trusted to your father; you have (found fault) without
se fier *père* *se formaliser* *sans*
occasion; these flowers have (faded away).—B. I had married;
raison *se flétrir* *se marier*
she had distrusted me; we had been tolerably well; you
se défier de moi *se porter assez bien*
had laughed at him; they had complained of you.—C. I
se moquer de *se plaindre*
had rejoiced at that news; he had repented of his faults;
se réjouir de *nouvelle* *se repentir de* *faute*
we had walked in the park; you had submitted to their
se promener *se conformer*

orders; they had remembered me.—D. I shall have
ordre se ressouvenir de moi
 seized his arms; she will have (painted her face); we
s'emparer de arme se farder
 shall have fancied that he was right; you will have
s'imaginer avoir B raison
 (grown rich); those women will have (stolen away).—E. I
s'enrichir femme s'esquiver
 should have repented of my temerity; he would have
témérité
 boasted of his birth; we should have devoted ourselves
se vanter naissance se dévouer
 entirely to the service of our country; you would have
entièrement —m pays
 degraded yourselves in the public opinion; they would
*se dégrader **
 have (been drowned).—F. That I may have (been deceived)
se noyer se tromper
 so grossly; that she may have decided to stay; that we
si grossièrement se décider rester
 may have (had relaxation) from the fatigue; that you may
se délasser — f
 have disguised yourselves so cleverly; that your sisters may
*se déguiser * si adroitement*
 have exposed themselves so rashly. —G. That I might
*s'exposer * si témérairement*
 have revenged myself; that she might have neglected
*se venger * se négliger*
 herself in that important circumstance; that we might have
** — circonstance*
 lost ourselves in the forest; that you might have con-
*s'égarer * forêt s'en-*
 versed about plots against the state; that they might
tretenir de complot contre état
 have annoyed (one another) in that law-suit.
se desservir réciproquement procès

Of the IRREGULAR VERBS.

For brevity's sake we shall give only the first person of each tense, whenever all the others are formed regularly from this first person. The learner must therefore refer to the following table, where he will find all the regular terminations of the tenses in every verb when there is no irregularity.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

	<i>Je</i>	<i>tu</i>	<i>il or elle</i>	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>ils or elles</i>
A.	e,	es,	e,	} ons,	ez,	ent,
	s,	s,	t,			
	x,	x,	t,			
	cs,	cs,	c,			
	ds,	ds,	d,			
	ts,	ts,	t,			

IMPERFECT.

B.	ois,	ois,	oit,	ions,	iez	oient.
----	------	------	------	-------	-----	--------

PRETERIT.

C.	ai,	as,	a,	âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
	is,	is,	it,	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
	us,	us,	ut,	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
	ins,	ins,	int,	îmes,	întes,	inrent.

FUTURE.

D.	rai,	ras,	ra,	rons,	rez,	ront.
----	------	------	-----	-------	------	-------

CONDITIONAL.

E.	rois,	rois,	roit,	rions,	riez,	roient.
----	-------	-------	-------	--------	-------	---------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

F.	e,	es,	e,	ions,	iez,	ent.
----	----	-----	----	-------	------	------

IMPERFECT.

G.	asse,	asses,	ât,	assions,	assiez,	assent.
	isse,	isses,	ît,	issions,	issiez,	issent.
	usse,	usses,	ût,	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
	msse,	insses,	înt,	inssions,	inssiez,	inssent.

N. B. The second person singular of the imperative (H) is like the first person singular of the present of the indicative, and the first and second person plural, like the same persons of the indicative; the third persons, both singular and plural, are like the same persons of the present of the subjunctive.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION.

Aller, to go. Ger. allant. Part. allé.

A. Vais or vas, vas, va ; allons, allez, vont.

B. Allois.—C. Allai.—D. Irai.—E. Irois.

F. Aille, ailles, aille ; allions, alliez, aillent.—G. Allasse.

H. Va, aille ; allons, allez, aillent.

Envoyer, to send. Ger. envoyant. Part. envoyé.

A. Envoie.—B. Envoyois.—C. Envoyai.—D. Enverrai.

E. Enverrois.—F. Envoie.—G. Envoyasse.—H. Envoie.

Conjugate in the same manner *renvoyer*, to send back, to dismiss.

A. I go every day to the park ; he sends back to you your
tous les jours *parc*
 books ; we go to-night to the play ; they go to dine (out
ce soir *comédie* * *diner* à
 of town).—B. I (was going) (to your house) when I
la campagne *chez vous* *quand* *ai*
 met you.—C. We went yesterday to see a review.—D.
rencontré * *voir* *revue*
 he will go to Richmond next week ; we shall send
la prochain semaine *f* *du*
 succour to our allies ; you will go (to-morrow) to fetch
secours *allié* *demain* * *chercher*
 my coat ; they will (send back) our horses.—E. He would
habit *cheval*
 go without me ; you would send two little money.—F. That
sans *trop peu d'argent*
 we may go into the wood ; that they may send me my razors.
dans *bois* *rasoir*
 G. That she might dismiss her chambermaid ; that we
femme de chambre
 might go to church.—H. Go to school ; let us go to Vaux-
l'église *sing* *l'école* *au*
 hall ; send your children (to take a walk).
enfant *à la promenade*.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION.

Acquérir, to acquire. Ger. acquérant. Part. acquis.

A. Acquiers, -iers, -iert ; acquér-ons, -ez, acquièrent.

B. Acquérois.—C. Acquis.—D. Acquerrai.—E. Acquerrois.

F. Acquier-e, -es, -e ; acquér-ions, -iez, acquièrent.

G. Acquisse.—H. Acquiers.

Conjugate in the same manner *conquérir*, to conquer ;
s'enquérir, to enquire ; and *requérir*, to request, to require.

Assaillir, to assault. Ger. assaillant. Part. assailli.

- A. Assaille.—B. Assaillois.—C. Assaillis.—D. Assaillirai.
E. Assaillirois.—F. Assaille.—G. Assaillisse.—H. Assaille.

Conjugate in the same manner *tressaillir*, to start.

Bouillir, to boil. Ger. bouillant. Part. bouilli.

- A. Bous, bous, bout ; bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.
B. Bouillois.—C. Bouillis.—D. Bouillirai.—E. Bouillirois.
F. Bouille.—G. Bouillisse.—H. Bous.

Conjugate in the same manner *ébouillir*, to boil down, and *rebouillir*, to boil again.

Courir, to run. Ger. courant. Part. couru.

- A. Cours, cours, court ; courons, courez, courent.
B. Courois.—C. Courus.—D. Courrai.—E. Courrois.
F. Coure.—G. Courusse.—H. Cours.

Conjugate in the same manner *accourir*, to run to ; *concourir*, to concur ; *discourir*, to discourse ; *encourir*, to incur ; *parcourir*, to run over ; *recourir*, to have recourse ; and *secourir*, to assist.

Cueillir, to gather. Ger. cueillant. Part. cueilli.

- A. Cueille.—B. Cueillois.—C. Cueillis.—D. Cueilleraï.
E. Cueillerois.—F. Cueille.—G. Cueillisse.—H. Cueille.

Conjugate in the same manner *accueillir*, to welcome ; and *recueillir*, to collect.

Fuir, to flee. Ger. fuyant. Part. fui.

- A. Fuis, fuis, fuit ; fuyons, fuyez, fuient.
B. Fuyois.—C. Fuis.—D. Fuirai.—E. Fuirois.
F. Fuie, fuies, fuie ; fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
G. Fuisse, *not commonly used*.—H. Fuis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'enfuir*, to run away.

Mourir, to die. Ger. mourant. Part. mort.

- A. Meurs, meurs, meurt ; mourons, mourez, meurent.
B. Mourois.—C. Mourus.—D. Mourrai.—E. Mourrois.
F. Meure, meures, meure ; mourions, mouriez, meurent.
G. Mourusse.—H. Meurs.

Vêtir, to clothe. Ger. Vêtant. Part. Vêtu.

A. Vêts, vêts, vêt; vêtons, vêtez, vêtent.—B. Vêtois.

C. Vêtis.—D. Vêtirai.—E. Vêtirois.—F Vête.—G. Vétisse.

H. Vêts.

Conjugate in the same manner *revêtir*, to invest; and *dévêtir*, to divest.

A. I. acquire every day new knowledge; he
tous les jours de nouveau connoissance pl
 collects a selection of useful books; that water boils too
choix m utile livre eau trop
 fast; we (have recourse) to your generosity; you gather
fort générosité

fruits which are not ripe; they clothe all the poor
des — mûr revêtir pauvre pl
 of their parish.—B. I did incur the hatred of that cruel
paroisse haine f —

man; that affair required all your attention; we did
affaire f —

clothe all the orphans of our neighbourhood; you did en-
vêtir orphelin voisinage

quire about idle stories; they were dying with fear.—
de vain histoire se mourir de peur

C. I ran at his voice; Alexander conquered a great part of
accourir à voix partie

Asia; we ran away at the first appearance of danger;
l'Asie à premier apparence —

you did not succour him in time; they died last year.—
à temps dernier l'année

D. I shall flee from bad companies; he will discourse
** les mauvais compagnie*

upon the immortality of the soul; we shall assault the
sur —tê âme

enemy to-morrow in their entrenchments; by your
ennemi pl demain dans retranchement par

imprudence, will you not concur to the ruin of your
— ruine

brother? they will receive you with kindness.—E. I would
frère accueillir avec bonté

(run over) all that province; he would start with joy; we
—f de joie

should run faster than your friend; you would incur the
plus vite que ami

displeasure of your parents; they would (throw off some
disgrâce — se dévêtir

clothing) before summer.—F. That I may reap corn
avant l'été recueillir du blé

and wine for two years; have a care that the milk do not
*du vin pour deux ans H * soîn lait **

(boil again); that we may request that favour from you;
 that you may flee ^{faveur} bad example; that they may die in
^{le mauvais exemple} the arms of their friends.—G. That I might run after ^{dans}
^{bras} chimeras; that he might collect the prize of his labours;
^{chimère} that we might start with fear; that you might clothe
^{prix} yourself more fashionably: that those ladies might acquire ^{travail}
^{de peur} a general esteem by their modesty.—H. Gather these flowers
^{plus à la mode} and fruits for thy sisters; let him run away rather than
^{dame} (expose himself) to perish; let us run over the career of
^{l'estime f} life with patience and resignation; enquire about that
^{—tie} event; let them run at the voice of that honest man.
^{fleur} and assist him.
^{ces — pour sœur} qu'ils

IRREGULAR VERBS of the SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Asseoir, to sit. Ger. asseyant. Part. assis.

- A. Assieds, assieds, assied; asseyons, asseyez, asseyent.
 B. Asseyois.—C. Assis.—D. Assièrai, or asseyerai.
 E. Assièrois, or asseyerois.—F. Asseye.—G. Assisse.
 H. Assieds.

This verb, and its compound *rasseoir*, to sit down again, are oftenest used as reflected verbs.

Falloir, to be necessary (impersonal), no gerund. Part. fallu.

- ° A. Il faut.—B. Il falloit.—C. Il fallut.—D. Il faudra.
 E. Il faudroit.—F. Qu'il faille.—G. Qu'il fallût (No imp.)

Mouvoir, to move. Ger. mouvant. Part. mu.

- A. Meus, meus, meut; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.
 B. Mouvois.—C. Mus.—D. Mouvrai.—E. Mouvrois.
 F. Meuve, meuves, meuve; mouvions, mouviez, meuvent.
 G. Musse.—H. Meus, meuve; mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.

Conjugate in the same manner *émouvoir*, to stir up, and *promouvoir*, to promote.

Pleuvoir, *to rain, (impersonal)*. Ger. Pleuvant. Part. Plu.

- A. Il pleut.—B. Il pleuvoit.—C. Il plut.—D. Il pleuvra.
E. Il pleuvrait.—F. Qu'il pleuve.—G. Qu'il plût. (*No imp.*)

Pouvoir, *to be able*. Ger. pouvant. Part. pu.

- A. Puis or peux, peux, peut; pouvons, pouvez, peuvent.
B. Pouvois.—C. Pus.—D. Pourrai.—E. Pourrais.
F. Puisse.—G. Pusse. (*No imperative*).

Savoir, *to know*. Ger. sachant. Part. Su.

- A. Sais, sais, sait; savons, savez, savent. B. Savois.
C. Sus.—D. Saurai.—E. Saurois.—F. Sache.—G. Susse.
H. Sache, sache; sachons, sachez, sachent.

Valoir, *to be worth*. Ger. valant. Part. valu.

- A. Vaux, vaux, vaut; valons, valez, valent.
B. Valois.—C. Valus.—D. Vaudrai.—E. Vaudrois.
F. Vaille, vailles, vaille; valions, valiez, vaillent.
G. Valusse.—H. Vaux, vaille; valons, valez, vaillent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *équivaloir*, to be equivalent, and *revaloir*, to return like for like; but *prévaloir*, to prevail, makes in the present of the subjunctive *que je prévale, tu prévalues, il prévale; nous prévalions, vous prévaliez, ils prévalent*.

Voir, *to see*. Ger. voyant. Part. vu.

- A. Vois, vois, voit; voyons, voyez, voient.
B. Voyois.—C. Vis.—D. Verrai.—E. Verrois.
F. Voie, voies, voie; voyions, voyiez, voient.—G. Visse.
H. Vois, voie; voyons, voyez, voient.

Conjugate in the same manner *revoir*, to see again, and *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of. *Prévoir*, to foresee, makes in the future and the conditional, *je prévoirai, je prévoirois*; the other tenses like *voir*. *Pourvoir*, to provide, makes in the preterite of the indicative *je pourvus*; in the future, *je pourvoirai*; in the conditional, *je pourvoirois*; and, in the preterite of the subjunctive, *je pourvusse*: the other tenses like *voir*. *Surseoir*, to supersede, is also conjugated like *voir*; but it makes in the future and the conditional *je surseoirai, je surseoirois*.

Vouloir, *to be willing*. Ger. voulant. Part. voulu.

- A. Veux, veux, veut; voulons, voulez, veulent.
B. Voulais.—C. Voulus.—D. Voudrai.—E. Voudrois.
F. Veuille, veuilles, veuille; voulions, vouliez, veulent.
G. Voulusse. (*No imperative*.)

A. 1. (have a glimpse of) something shining under
quelque chose de brillant sous
 the bed; thou (art not better) than thy brother; the
lit ne valoir pas mieux que
 spring which moves the machine is very simple; it is ne-
ressort qui — f fort —
 cessary to practise virtue, if we wish to be happy;
** pratiquer la vertu si l'on vouloir 98 A * heureux*
 we can be very useful to you on that occasion; you
*pouvoir très utile * dans —*
 do not know your lesson; they see that they were mistaken.
** leçon s'étoient trompés*

—B. I did foresee that you would not succeed; it did rain
réussir E
 yesterday; we could not (set off) sooner; you did prevail
hier pouvoir partir plus tôt
 over us; they did (stir up) the passions of the audience.—
sur auditeur pl

c. I foresaw the dangerous consequences of that step;
dangereux — démarche f
 he (sat down) under the shade of a tree, we revised his
s'asseoir à ombre arbre m revoir
 work before it was printed; you provided for the safety
ouvrage avant qu'on l'imprimât à sûreté
 of your house; the judges did (put off) the execution of
maison juges surseoir —
 the arrest that they had decreed.—D. I shall know how to
*arrêt B rendu * **

remunerate you for your diligence; (he shall suffer for it);
récompenser de — il me le revaloir
 we shall (sit down again) when they are gone; you will see
se rasseoir quand D partis
 better from this place; their apology will be equivalent to
mieux — excuse pl

a refusal.—E. I would with all my heart to oblige you in
*refus vouloir de cœur * —ger*
 that affair; the king would promote him to a higher
affaire f roi plus haut
 office, if he would only to seem to wish for it;
*charge f s'il vouloir B seulement * paraître * désirer * la*
 we should (put off) the pursuit of our designs; you would
surseoir poursuite f dessein
 move the heart of that unfeeling man; they would
émouvoir insensible

provide for our wants.—F. That I may prevail upon his
à besoin sur la
 hard-heartedness; I do not think that it will rain to day;
dureté de son cœur penser F aujourd'hui
 that we may see again those happy days; that you may
heureux jour

66 IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

move that stone; that their estates may be equivalent to
pierre terres
 ours.—G. That I might sit down among his judges; that
s'asseoir parmi juge
 it might be necessary to ask his pardon; that we
** lui demander ** —
 might comfort him; that you might know where to find
*pouvoir consoler où * trouver*
 him; that those stockings might (be good for nothing).—
le bas ne valoir rien
 H. See the consequences of thy folly; let him provide for
— folie a
 the happiness of his children; let us foresee the danger;
bonheur enfant —
 (sit down) by me; let them know three or four pages
s'asseoir auprès de trois ou quatre —
 of their catechism before dinner
catéchisme avant le dîner.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Faire, to do, to make. Ger. faisant. Part. fait.

- A. Fais, fais, fait; faisons, faites, font.—B. Faisois.
 C. Fis.—D. Ferai.—E. Ferois.—F. Fasse.—G. Fisse.
 H. Fais, fasse; faisons, faites, fassent.

Conjugate in the same manner, *contrefaire*, to counterfeit, to mimic; *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; *satisfaire*, to satisfy; *surfaire*, to ask too much; and *redéfaire*, to undo again.

Traire, to milk. Ger. trayant. Part. trait.

- A. Trais, trais, trait; trayons, trayez, traient.—B. Trayois.
 (no pret.)—D. Trairai.—E. Trairois.—F. Traye (no vret.)
 H. Trais.

Conjugate in the same manner, *attirer*, to allure; *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraindre*, to distract; *extraire*, to extract; *retraire*, to fine-draw; *retraire*, to redeem, and *soustraire*, to subtract, to withdraw.

- A. I do no harm; she milks her cows; we satisfy our
ne pas de mal vache
 masters; you (ask too much) for that meadow; they extract
*maître **
 all the finest passages of that work.—B. I was undoing all
plus beau — ouvrage toutes
 the seams of my gown; he distracted his school-fellows;
couture robe f camarades

we subtracted the fourth of the sum; you did fine-draw
quart *somme*
the tapestry; they did attract the birds.—c. I (made again)
tapisserie *oiseau* *refaire*
a journey to Paris; he (got rid) of the false opinion he had
le voyage de — *se défaire* *faux* — *qu'il* B
conceived of their merit; we (undid again) five or six times
conçue *mérite m* *cinq ou* — *fois*
the same nem; you made a great mistake; they mimicked
même ourlet *méprise f*
the singularities of that (young lady.)—D. I shall redeem that
ridicule *demoiselle*
land; he will abstract from those bodies all the accessory
terre *corps* *accessoire*
qualities; we shall satisfy you (as much as) we can; you
—*té* *autant que* *pouvoir* D
will not withdraw those guilty persons from the rigour of
soustraire *coupable* * *à* *rigueur*
the laws; they will not distract me from my studies.—
loi *étude*
E. I would not do it for (any thing) in the world; she
ne *le pour* *rien* *à* *mondem*
would fine-draw her gown; we would withdraw our pupils
robé f *élève*
from the dangers of bad companies; you would extract
à — *des mauvais compagnie*
the salts of these plants; they would distract us by their
sel *plante* *par*
prattle.—F. That I may (ask too much) for that muslin; that
babil * *mousseline f*
salt may attract pigeons; that we may satisfy you in
le sel *les* — *en*
(every thing); that you may not (get rid) of your prejudices;
tout *se défaire* *préjugé*
that they may not do again their exercises.—G. That I might
thème
not (undo again) my work; that he might not (ask too much)
ouvrage
for his goods; that we might (take again) a walk; that
* *marchandise* *refaire* *promenade*
you might not mimick every body; that they might not make
tout le monde
any noise.—H. Milk thy goats; let us satisfy our parents;
de bruit *chèvre* —
pay more attention to your writing.
faire plus de — *écriture*

IRREGULAR VERBS of the NINTH CONJUGATION.

Naître, to be born. Ger. naissant. Part. né.

- A. Nais, nais, naît ; naissons, naissez, naissent.
 B. Naissois.—C. Naquis.—D. Naîtrai.—E. Naïtrois.
 F. Naisse.—G. Naquisse.—H. Nais.

Conjugate in the same manner *renaître*, to be born again ; but it has no participle past.

Pâitre, to graze. Ger. paissant. Part. pu.

- A. Pais, pais, pâit ; paissions, paisez, paissent.
 B. Paissois. (no pret).—D. Pâitrai.—E. Pâitrois.—F. Paisse.
 (no pret.)—H. Pais.

Conjugate in the same manner its compound *repâitre*, to feed ; but it makes in the preterit of the indicative, *je repus*, and in the preterit of the subjunctive, *je repusse*.

- A. That man thirsts (after nothing but) blood and slaughter ; we are all born liable to many infirmities.—
ne se repâitre que de sang
de carnage sujet beaucoup de —tés
 B. Hope revived in his heart ; their flocks fed on the tender grass.—C. Virgil was born at Mantua ; those fools (fed themselves) upon chimeras.—D. Arts and sciences will revive under his reign.—E. Could that man feast his eyes on that cruel sight?—F. I wish that happiness may revive for him.—G. I did not think that he might feast his imagination with that hope.
*l'espérance renaître dans cœur troupeau pâitre **
tendre herbe f Virgile à Mantoue insensé
se repâitre de chimère les — les —
*renaître sous règne m * repâitre*
œil de spectacle souhaiter le bonheur
renaître pour penser B repâitre
 — de espoir

IRREGULAR VERBS of the TENTH CONJUGATION.

Boire, to drink. Ger. buvant. Part. bu.

- A. Bois, bois, boit ; buvons, buvez, boivent.
 B. Buvois.—C. Bus.—D. Boirai.—E. Boirois.
 F. Boive, boives, boive ; buvions, buviez, boivent.
 G. Busse.—H. Bois, boive ; buvons, buvez, boivent.

Conjugate in the same manner *reboire*, to drink again.

Conelure, to conclude. Ger. concluant. Part. conclu.

- A. Conclus, conclus, conclut; conclu -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Concluois.—C. Conclus.—D. Conclurai.—E. Conclurois.
 F. Conclue.—G. Conclusse.—H. Conclus.

Conjugate in the same manner *exclure*, to exclude.

Confire, to pickle. Ger. confisant. Part. confit.

- A. Confis, confis, confit; confis -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Confisois.—C. Confis.—D. Confirai.—E. Confirois.
 F. Confise.—G. Confisse.—H. Confis.

Conjugate in the same manner *circoncire*, to circumcise, and *suffire*, to suffice, except in the participle past, where they make *circoncis* and *suffi*.

Croire, to believe, to think. Ger. croyant. Part. cru

- A. Crois, erois, croit; croyons, croyez, croient.
 B. Croyois.—C. Crus.—D. Croirai.—E. Croirois.
 F. Crois, croies, croie; croyions, croyiez, croient.
 G. Crusse.—H. Crois, croie; croyons, croyez, croient.

Dire, to say, to tell. Ger. disant. Part. dit.

- A. Dis, dis, dit; disons, dites, disent.—B. Disois.
 C. Dis.—D. Dirai.—E. Dirois.—F. Dise.—G. Disse.
 H. Dis, dise; disons, dites, disent.

Conjugate in the same manner *redire*, to say again. As for the other compounds of *dire*, viz. *dédire*, to unsay; *contredire*, to contradict; *interdire*, to forbid; *médire*, to slander, and *prédire*, to foretel; they make in the second person plural of the present of the indicative and of the imperative, *vous dédisez, contredisez, interdisez, médisez, prédisez*. *Maudire*, to curse; take two *ss* in the following forms, *gerund, maudissant*.—
 A. Maudissons, maudissez, maudissent.—B. Maudissois.—F. Maudisse.—H. qu'il maudisse; maudissons, maudissez, qu'ils maudissent.

Lire, to read. Ger. lisant. Part. lu.

- A. Lis, lis, lit; lisons, lisez, lisent.—B. Lisois.—C. Lus.
 D. Lirai.—E. Lirois.—F. Lise.—G. Lusse.—H. Lis.

Conjugate in the same manner *relire*, to read over again, and *élire*, to elect.

Luire, to shine, *reluire*, to glitter, and *nuire*, to hurt, are only irregular in the participle past, *lui, relui, nui*.

Rire, to laugh. Ger. riant. Part. ri.

A. Ris, ris, rit; rions, riez, rient.—B. Riois.—C. Ris.
D. Rirai.—E. Rirois.—F. Rie.—G. Risse.—H. Ris.

Conjugate in the same manner *sourire*, to smile.

A. I read an interesting book; he thinks to (impose
intéressant livre m * *m'en*
upon me); we drink with ice; you speak truth; they
imposer *à la glace* *dire la vérité*
curse their fate.—B. I did laugh heartily; he did pickle
destinée *de bon cœur*

cucumbers; we did contradict that news; you did
des concombres *nouvelle*

read again my letter; they did forbid him the entrance of
lettre f *lui* *l'entrée*

their house.—C. A ray of hope shone upon us in the midst
maison *rayon* * *à* *milieu*

of our misfortunes; he smiled at him as a sign of approba-
malheur * *lui en* * *signe*

tion; we foretold those disasters; you did hurt your
— *désastre* *à*

interests; they elected an honest man for their representa-
intérêt *honnête* *pour* *représen-*

tative.—D. I will not drink again of that liquor; he will ex-
tant *liqueur*

clude his son from his succession; we shall not slander
filz — *ne* *de*

any one; you will conclude, if you like, that we are wrong;
personne *vouloir A* *avoir tort*

the Rabbins will circumcise several children to-morrow.—E. I
plusieurs enfant *demain*

would not contradict you in any manner; that would not
ne *désire* *en aucun manière cela*

suffice me; that diamond would not shine (so much), if it
diamant *reluire tant* *s'il*

were not pure; we should laugh at his expence; you would
B *fin* *à ses dépens*

hurt me more than you think; they would preserve
plus *ne croire A* *confire des*

peaches with brandy.—F. That I may exclude him from
pêche *à l'eau-de-vie*

my company; that he may read attentively; that we may
compagnie — *ment*

drink with sobriety; that you may elect a president; that
avec — *ité* *pré* —

they may curse their perverseness.—G. That I might read
— *sité*

again that poem; that she might slander her best friends;
poème *de meilleur ami f*

that we might suffice to ourselves; that you might tell a
se suffire nous-mêmes
 falsehood; that they might drink the health of the king.—H.
fausseté à santé roi
 Conclude thy speech; let him smile to his mother; let us
discours mère ne
 curse nobody; tell me again your adventure.
personne aventure

IRREGULAR VERBS of the ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

Battre, to beat. Ger. battant. Part. battu.

- A. Bats, bats, bat; battons, battez, battent.—B. Battois.
 C. Battis.—D. Battraî.—E. Battrois.—F. Batte.
 G. Battisse.—H. Bats.

Conjugate in the same manner *abattre*, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight, and *rebattre*, to beat again.

Coudre, to sew. Ger. cousant. Part. cousu.

- A. Couds, couds, coud; cousons, cousez, cousent.
 B. Cousois.—C. Cousis.—D. Coudrai.—E. Coudrois.
 F. Couse.—G. Cousisse.—H. Couds.

Conjugate in the same manner *découdre*, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew over again.

Mettre, to put. Ger. mettant. Part. mis.

- A. Mets, mets, met; mettons, mettez, mettent.
 B. Mettois.—C. Mis.—D. Mettraî.—E. Mettrois.—F. Mette.
 G. Misse.—H. Mets.

Conjugate in the same manner *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *démettre*, to turn out, to disjoint; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit; *promettre*, to promise; *remettre*, to put again, to restore, to replace; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit, and *s'entremettre*, to intermeddle.

Moudre, to grind. Ger. moulant. Part. moulu.

- A. Mouds, mouds, moud; moulons, moulez, moulent.
 B. Moulois.—C. Moulus.—D. Moudrai.—E. Moudrois.
 F. Moule.—G. Moulusse.—H. Mouds.

Conjugate in the same manner *émoudre*, to grind, (razors knives, &c.) and *remoudre*, to grind again.

Prendre, to take. Ger. prenant. Part. pris.

- A. Prends, prends, prend; prenons, prenez, prennent.
 B. Prenoie.—C. Pris.—D. Prendrai.—E. Prendrois.
 F. Prenn-e, -es, -e; pren -ions, -iez, prennent.—G. Prisise.
 H. Prends, prenne; pren-ons, -ez, prennent.

Conjugate in the same manner *apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to comprehend, to understand; *déprendre*, to lose, to part; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to mistake, to be deceived; *repandre*, to take again, to reply, to chide, and *surprendre*, to surprise.

Résoudre, to resolve. Ger. résolvant. Part. résolu or résous.

- A. Résous, résous, résout; résolv-ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Résolvois.—C. Résolus.—D. Résoudrai.—E. Résoudrois.
 F. Résolve.—G. Résolusse.—H. Résous.

Conjugate in the same manner *absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve; but they have no preterit either in the indicative or in the subjunctive; their participles are *absous*, *dissous*.

Rompre, to break. Ger. rompant. Part. rompu.

- A. Romps, romps, rompt; romp -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Rompois.—C. Rompis.—D. Romprai.—E. Romprois.
 F. Rompe.—G. Rompisse.—H. Romps.

Conjugate in the same manner *corrompre*, to corrupt, and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

Suivre, to follow. Ger. suivant. Part. suivi.

- A. Suis, suis, suit; suivons, suivez, suivent.—B. Suivois.
 C. Suivis.—D. Suivrai.—E. Suivrois.—F. Suive.
 G. Suivisse.—H. Suis.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'ensuire*, to ensue, only used in the third persons of every tense, and *poursuivre*, to pursue.

Vaincre, to conquer. Ger. vainquant. Part. vaincu.

- A. Vaincs, vaincs, vainc; vainqu -ons, -ez, -ent.
 B. Vainquois.—C. Vainquis.—D. Vaincrai.—E. Vaincrois.
 F. Vainque.—G. Vainquisse.—H. Vaincs.

Conjugate in the same manner *convaincre*, to convince.

Vivre, to live. Ger. vivant. Part. vécu.

A. Vis, vis, vit; vivons, vivez, vivent.—B. Vivois.
 c. Véous.—D. Vivrai.—E. Vivrois.—F. Vive.—G. Vecusse.
 H. Vis.

Conjugate in the same manner *revivre*, to revive, and *survivre*, to survive.

A. I admit that principle; thou takest (too much)
 trouble; the wood which is burnt resolves itself into ashes
 —pe m trop de
 peine bois que on brûle se résoudre * en cendre
 and smoke; we submit ourselves to your decision; you
 en fumée se soumettre * dé—
 surprise me (very much); strong waters dissolve metals.
 beaucoup les fort eau les métal
 —B. I did fight for my country; thou didst not follow the
 pour pays
 lessons of thy tutor; that did not convince me; we did
 leçons précepteur cela se
 compromise ourselves to serve him; you did pursue an in-
 —mettre * pour servir
 nocent person; they did omit an essential duty.—C. I ground
 —m * —tiel devoir
 all the coffee; thou didst not learn thy lesson; he did not
 café leçon
 out-live that misfortune; we promised him a reward; you
 survivre à malheur lui récompense
 interrupted his sleep; they transmitted their glory to their
 sommeil gloire
 posterity.—D. I will not intermeddle in their dispute; thou
 postérité de —
 shalt conquer thy enemies; he will grind again the grain;
 ennemi —
 we shall permit you to go to the fair; you will unlearn
 de aller foire f
 all what you have learnt; you see the consequences that
 tout ce que voir — qui
 will ensue.—E. I should grind my razors; thou wouldst
 rasoir se
 disjoint thy leg; he would not understand that expla-
 démettre la jambe expli-
 nation; we should convince him; you would absolve
 cation
 them; they would pull down their castle.—F. That I may
 château
 (be deceived) upon that point; that she may sew her gown,
 sur — robe f

that he may commit the crime; that we may break the
 — m
 truce; that you may thrash the corn; that fathers may
trève f battre blé les père
 revive in their children.—G. That I might undertake that
dans enfant
 journey; that she might sew again that hem; that we might
voyage ourlet
 put more order in our affairs; that you might live more
plus d'ordre affaire
 regularly; that they might beat again these mattresses.
régulièrement matelas
 —H. Put again all thy books in their place; let her unsew
livre m à
 this whip; let us not corrupt the morals of youth; chide
surjet mœurs la jeunesse
 your pupils for their faults; let them resolve to suffer
élève de défaut se résoudre souffrir
 much.
beaucoup

HOW to form the ADVERBS from the ADJECTIVES.

Rule 1.—The adjectives which end with a vowel become adverbs, by adding *ment* to their final; as; *sage, sagement; poli, poliment; ingénu, ingénument.*

Rule 2.—The adjectives which end in *nt* become adverbs, by changing the final *nt* into *mment*; as, *constant, constamment; patient, patiemment.*

Rule 3.—The adjectives which end in any other consonant, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination; as, *grand, cruel, m. grande, cruelle, f. grandement, cruellement, adverbs.*—See how to make the feminine of adjectives, p. 20. The figures 1, 2, 3, have reference to the three above rules.

EXERCISE upon the FORMATION of ADVERBS.

My father can do that easily; you speak freely;
pouvoir (ir) A faire cela 1 aisé 1 libre
 they act prudently; he died suddenly; they fight
agir 2 prudent mourir (ir) c3 soudain combattre (ir)
 vigorously; he answered wisely; do you speak seriously?
3 vigoureux répondre c 1 sage 3 sérieux
 you suffer patiently; he denied the fact absolutely; they
souffrir 2 patient nier c fait 1 absolu

are happily out of danger; they will come probably; I
 3 *heureux hors* *venir* 1 *probable*
 have eaten sufficiently; speak to them separately; he an-
manger 2 *suffisant* *parler* H *leur* 1 *séparé* *ré-*
 sponded affirmatively; you do not speak clearly; I am
pondre c 3 *affirmatif* 3 *clair*
 constantly occupied; they speak figuratively; children are
 2 *constant* *occupé* 8 *figuratif* *les enfans*
 naturally fond of pleasure; your loss is really great;
 3 *naturel passionné pour le plaisir* *perte* f 3 *réel*
 he comes regularly; you did that secretly.
venir 3 *régulier* *faire* (ir) c *cela* 3 *secret*

PLACE of the ADVERBS.

Adverbs are generally placed in French after the verb, but never between the personal pronouns and the verb as in English, as will be further explained in chapter 19 of the Syntax, rules 172 and 173; example:

They never say what they think.

Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.

and not *Ils ne jamais disent.*

We always patiently suffer their insults; he seldom

toujours patiemment souffrir *insulte* *rarement*
 reads; they bravely assaulted the enemy; we dis-
lire (ir) —ment *assaillir* (ir) c

tinctly see; they miserably died; we are
 —tement *voir* (ir) *misérablement mourir* (ir) c *

sometimes deceived; you often contradict me;
quelquefois se méprendre (ir) A *souvent contredire* (ir)

they secretly retired; I willingly consent to that bar-
secrètement se retirer c *volontiers consentir*

gain; they reluctantly promised to go there; they
marché à *contre-cœur promettre* (ir) c *d'y aller*

strongly opposed that measure; they really deceive
fortement s'opposer c à *mesure* *réellement tromper*

you; he minutely enquired about that affair;
minutieusement s'enquérir (ir) c *de* *affaire*.

they are grossly mistaken.

* *grossièrement se méprendre* (ir) A

PART III.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX of ARTICLES.

THIS chapter is divided into four sections. The first explains the circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; the second enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French and not in English; the third describes those in which, on the contrary, it is used in English and not in French; and the fourth contains all cases in which both languages take no article.

N. B. It is proper to make the pupils learn the rules by heart, and translate them into French; also to explain the parts of speech of at least one sentence in every lesson. This practice will soon make them acquainted with all the terms of the grammar, and greatly facilitate the acquisition of the rules.

SECTION I.

Cases in which Articles are used in French and in English.

RULE I.—*Indefinite article un, une; a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un, m. une, f. a or an*) is used in both languages before a substantive singular, and not specified; examples:

a man; of a woman; to a bird; from a house.
un homme; d'une femme; à un oiseau; d'une maison.

A friend cannot be well known in prosperity, nor hidden in adversity. Good example is a language which every body understands. Fortune is a capricious deity. When a man is once out of the way of God, he easily falls from one fault into another. A wise man values pleasure very little, because it is a bane to the mind; but he values virtue much, because it is an ornament in

ami ne peut bien connu dans la prospérité ni se cacher l' — té le bon exemple langue f que tout le monde comprend la — f — cieux divinité
quand une fois hors voie Dieu tomber
aisément une faute f dans une autre sage homme estimer
très-peu le plaisir parce que c' poison pour l'esprit
beaucoup la vertu parce qu'elle ornement la

prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the source of all
consolation *source f tout*
 happiness.
bouheur

RULE 2.—*Definite article le, la, les; the.*

The definite article (*le, m. la, f, l',* before a vowel or an *h* mute, *les,* plural of both genders, the; *du, de la, de l', des,* of or from the; *au, à la, à l', aux,* to the;) is used in both languages before a substantive taken in a particular or an individual sense; examples:

The days of the month of January are very short.

Les jours du mois de Janvier sont très-courts.

The earth turns, and not the sun.

La terre tourne, et non le soleil.

The spring, the summer, the autumn and the winter are
printemps été automne hiver
the four seasons of the year. The sight, the hearing, the
saison année vue ouïe

feeling, the taste and the smell are the five natural senses.
toucher goût odorat cinq naturel sens

The east, the west, the north and the south are the four
est ouest nord sud
cardinal points.
cardinal —

The love of glory, the fear of shame and the design
amour la gloire crainte f la honte dessein
of making one's fortune, are often the cause of that valour
*de faire * — f souvent — f valeur*
so much celebrated among men. The instructions of
*si * vanté parmi les — de l'*

adversity are wholesome, though unpleasing; the lessons
salutaire quoique désagréable leçon
of prosperity are pleasing, but often pernicious: the
de la agréable —cieux

first discover sometimes concealed virtues, and the
première découvrir à quelquefois des caché
other hidden vices. The air is very healthy in France,
autre des secret —m — très sain en
and the climate temperate.
climat tempéré

RULE 3.—*a; an, rendered by le, la, les.*

The English use the indefinite article (*a* or *an*) before nouns of *measure, weight, and number*, when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for; the French, on the contrary, use the definite article (*le, la, les*) in such cases; examples:

A shilling a yard ; six-pence a pound.

Un schelling la verge ; six sous la livre.

as if it were, a shilling the yard, six-pence the pound.

I sell sugar for five guineas a hundred weight ; coffee
*vendre le sucre * guinée quintal * le café*

at seven shillings a pound, and tobacco at three-pence an

ounce. Corn is sold for two crowns a bushel. This
** schelling livre f le tabac * sou*

ribband costs a shilling a yard. This cheese costs seven-

pence a pound. Good wine is sold for five shillings a
ruban coûter verge f fromage

bottle. Bread costs two-pence a pound. Beer is sold
*bouteille le pain la bière se vend **

for five-pence a pot. (How much) a pound? How much
pot combien

a yard? How much a dozen?
verge f douzaine f

SECTION II.

Cases in which Articles are used in French, and not in English.

RULE 4.—*le, la, les, not the.*

✧ * The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French and not in English, before all substantives taken in the whole extent of their signification ; examples :

Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious.
La vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.

Clemency, wisdom and courage are finer ornaments
clémence sagesse — de plus beau ornement
 in a prince, than the jewels with which he is covered. Custom
*dans — que joyau * dont couvert usage*
 is the legislator of languages. Charity is the greatest of
législateur des langue charité la plus grande
 all christian virtues. History, geography and mathematics
chrétien vertu histoire géographie mathématique.
 are necessary sciences. Pride and vanity are often the
des nécessaire — orgueil —tè souvent

* The rules marked thus ✧ are the most essential, and must be learnt by heart. I should advise to make the pupil first go through them alone ; and afterwards to begin the syntax a second time, and then to do all the rules in the same order in which they are set down in the book.

source of many misfortunes. *Heroes* have their fits
 — *f* *bien des malheurs* *héros* *moment*
 of fear, and cowards their brave moments. *Intemperance*
de crainte *lâche* *moment de bravoure* *intempérance*
 and idleness are the two most dangerous enemies of life.
 paresse *plus dangereux ennemi* *vie*
Eloquence, painting, sculpture and *poetry* belong to the
é — *peinture* — *poésie appartenir*
 imagination.

RULE 5.—*le, la, les*, before names of kingdoms.

1. The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French, and not in English, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces; examples:

France, England and Spain are three great kingdoms.
La France, l'Angleterre, et l'Espagne sont trois grands royaumes.

2. Nevertheless, these nouns take no articles, when they are preceded by the preposition *en*; examples:

I am going to France. He lives in Spain.
Je vais en France. Il demeure en Espagne.

3. They are usually preceded by the preposition *de*, instead of the definite article *du, de l',* or *de la*, when they are the latter of two substantives, and express the country of the first, and also when they come after the verb *venir*; examples:

Burgundy wine. Spanish wool. I come from Russia.
Le vin de Bourgogne. La laine d'Espagne. Je viens de Russie.

In this case nouns of kingdoms and provinces may be considered as adjectives, used to specify the noun antecedent.—See for farther explanation the same rule in the grammar*.

2. I like to travel; I was last year in Italy;—3. I come
aimer à voyager *B l'an dernier* *Italie* *venir*
 now from Prussia;—2. I shall stay this winter in England;
à présent *Prusse* *rester cet hiver* *Angleterre*
 but I shall go next spring to Germany.
aller (ir) au prochain printemps en Allemagne.

1. Europe, Asia, Africa and America are the four
 — *Asie* *Afrique* *Amérique*
 parts of the world.—3. The kingdoms of France, Spain,
partie *monde m* *royaume m* — *Espagne*
 and England are very powerful.—1. Sicily is the granary of
très-puissant *Sicile f* *grenier*

* There are some nouns of kingdoms and provinces, which are always preceded by an article: such are, *le Mexique, le Bengal, le Perche, le Maine, &c.*

Italy, and Italy the garden of Europe.—3. I come from
l'Italie *jardin de l'* *venir*
 Russia, and I go next spring to America.—1.
Russie *aller (ir)* *à* *au* *en*
 Touraine, Anjou and Normandy are three fruitful provinces
 —f — —die f *fertile* —
 of France.—1. I set out for Portugal next week.—3. My
partir *à* * — *à* *la* *semaine* f
 father comes from Switzerland.
venir *Suisse*

RULE 6.—*le, la, les*, before adjectives.

The definite article (*le, la, les*) is used in French before all adjectives substantively used; example:

I like black better than red.

J'aime mieux le noir que le rouge.

Observe, that all the adjectives substantively used are masculine in French.

Good and bad seem to be blended together through
bon mauvais sembler * *mêlé ensemble dans*
 all nature, and sometimes to be confounded
toute la — *quelquefois* * *confondu*
 with each other. White and black are two opposite colours.
l'un avec l'autre blanc noir opposé couleur
 Green hurts the sight less than red.
vert blesser vue f moins que rouge

The wise man seeketh wisdom, but the fool despiseth
sage * *chercher sagesse* *à* *fou mépriser*
 understanding. Newton says, that there are seven primitive
raison *à* *dire (ir)* *qu'il y a*
 colours, called orange colour, red, yellow, green, blue, indigo,
couleur appelé — * *rouge, jaune, vert, bleu* —
 and violet.

RULE 7.—*Partitive article du, de la, des*; some.

✠ The partitive article (*du, m, de la, f, de l'*, before a vowel or an *h* mute; *des*, plural of both genders) is used in French before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number or portion of a thing. This article answers to the English word *some*, expressed or understood; example:

Give me some bread, some meat, and some eggs.
donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, et des œufs.

It might be said that the nouns preceded by *du, de la, or des* are in the genitive case, and that the word *portion* or *part* is understood.

Give me some bread and some butter; some beer or some
 donner H pain beurre m bière ou
 wine; some meat or some cheese; some mustard and some
 vin viande f fromage moutarde f
 vinegar; some apples, some oranges, and some lemons.
 vinaigre m pomme — citron

A good christian considers the world as a place of
 chrétien considérer monde m comme lieu
 banishment, where he meets with snares, difficulties and
 bannissement où trouver * piège —té
 dangers. Benefits procure friends, and one (good turn)
 — les 9 service —rer ami bienfait
 deserves another. Money gives to a woman credit,
 en mériter un autre 9 argent donner femme crédit
 friends, birth, and beauty. Spain produces wine, lemons,
 ami naissance beauté Espagne produire vin citron
 oranges, and olives. Give me some cold water and red
 — — froid eau f rouge
 wine,
 vin

RULE 8.—*de*, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*.

✧ If a substantive taken in a partitive sense, as before, is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du*, *de la*, *des*, example:

Give me some good bread, good meat, and good eggs.
 donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande et de bons œufs, not
 donnez-moi du bon pain, de la bonne viande, &c.

History is full of old generals, conquered by young sol-
 histoire 9 plein vieux général vaincus jeune * sol-
 diers. Great events happened at the death of Cæsar.
 dat événemens arriver c à mort Cæsar
 Good cyder (is better) than bad wine. We have in our
 bon cidre m vaut mieux que mauvais vin
 garden fine peaches and apricots. To write 2 well 1, one
 jardin belles pêche beaux abricot pour écrire bien il
 must have good ink, good pens, and good paper. There is
 faut * encre f plume f papier voilà *
 good bread, but bad meat.
 pain mauvais viande f.

RULE 9.—Where the article is required.

✧ Every noun which is the subject or the object of a verb, must have in French one of the three articles, *definite*, *indefinite*, or *partitive*; except proper names and nouns preceded by any pronoun; example.

Hypocrisy is an homage which vice pays to virtue.
l'hypocrisie est un hommage que le vice rend à la vertu.
 as if it were, the hypocrisy is an homage which the vice pays to the virtue.

Honour is due to kings and magistrates. Let us prefer
honneur dû roi 10 —trai préférer H
 virtue to interest. Rare events strike us (with admiration.)
vertu intérêt — événement frapper 48 d'admira-
 Ignorance is the source of errors, scruples, and super-
tion — — f erreur 10 scrupule m.
 stition. Glory and infamy are vain, if they do not attend
— Gloire infamie — 50 accompagner
 real goods and evils. Iron and steel are more useful than
réel 27 biens 10 maux fer acier plus utile
 gold and silver. Remedies are often disgusting in propor-
or argent remède souvent dégoûtant en —
 tion as they are salutary. Gold and silver cannot render
de ce qu' 50 salutaire ne sauroient rendre
 man happy.
heureux

RULE 10.—The Articles must be repeated

✧ The articles *definite, indefinite and partitive*, are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number ; example :

Fear and ignorance are the sources of Superstition.
La crainte et l'ignorance sont les sources de la superstition.

Politeness is not always born with us ; it is often the
Politesse 4 toujours née avec 50 souvent
 offspring of custom, experience and application. If society is
fruit usage 4 — — si société 4 se
 formed of the communication of ideas and sentiments, speech
forme — idée 4 — la parole
 must be the essential tie of it ; being at once the pencil of
*doit en être essentiel lien * * à la fois pinceau*
 wit, and the interpreter of the heart. Interest, glory and
esprit 4 interprète cœur Intérêt 9 gloire
 ambition are the great motives of our actions. Besides gold
— grand mobile m — outre or 4
 and silver, Europe draws from the new world pepper,
argent 5 tirer nouveau monde 7 poivre m
 sugar, tea, tobacco, and several other things. Vice and
sucre m thé tabac plusieurs autre chose — m 4
 virtue have contrary effects.
vertu contraire 7 effet.

SECTION III.

Cases in which Articles are used in English, and not in French.

RULE 12.—*the, not, le, la, les.*

The definite article (*the*) is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers *first, second, third, &c.* when they come after the words *book, chapter, &c.* or the name of a sovereign; examples:

Henry the first;	Charles the second;	George the third.
<i>Henri premier;</i>	<i>Charles second;</i>	<i>George trois.</i>
Volume the first;	chapter the sixth;	article the ninth.
<i>tome premier;</i>	<i>chapitre six;</i>	<i>article neuf.</i>

Observe that the ordinal numbers used in English after the name of a sovereign are expressed in French by the cardinal *trois, quatre, cinq, six, &c.* the two first excepted; but the cardinal or ordinal are almost indifferently used after the words *livre, chapitre, &c.* and we can say *livre six, or sixième; règle douze, or douzième; chapitre quatre, or quatrième.*

Charles the second, king of Spain, son of Philip the fourth,
roi Espagne fils Philippe
left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. William the third, king
laisser c royaume Guillaume
of England, married the princess Mary, daughter of James
Angleterre épouser c princesse Marie fille Jacques
the second, and grand-daughter of Charles the first.
petite-fille

Book the third, chapter the sixth, section the second, rule
livre m *chapitre m* — *règle f*
the tenth, volume the fourth, article the fifth.
tome m

RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is used in English, and not in French, before a substantive which expresses the *titles, professions, trades, country*, or any other attribute of the noun antecedent; examples:

I am a Frenchman; he is a physician; he is a nobleman.
Je suis François il est médecin il est noble

Socrates was a philosopher; Apelles a painter; Phidias, a sculptor; Cicero, an orator; Livy, an historian; and Virgil, a poet. Harvey, a physician of great reputation.

I am a Frenchman, but my father was an Englishman.
François B *Anglois*

The best coffee comes from Mocha, a town of Arabia
meilleur café venir Moka ville l'Arabie

Felix. Was your father a nobleman? No, he was a
Heureux B 92 noble Non B

soldier. The canal of Briar, in the Gatinois, a province of
soldat — dans m —

France, joins the Loire to the Seine. The king of Prussia
joindre — f — f Prusse

was at once a king, a warrior, and a philosopher.
B à la fois guerrier —phe

RULE 13.—a not *un* or *une*.

1. The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is also used in English, and not in French, in the title of a book; example:

A history of England. A French grammar.
histoire d'Angleterre grammaire française

2. After the word *what*, used to shew surprise; examples:

What a noise you make! What a dreadful account!
quel bruit vous faites! quelle fâcheuse nouvelle!

3. Before a substantive used to specify or explain the noun preceding; example:

I come from Caen, a town of Normandy.
Je viens de Caen, ville de Normandie.

1. A Roman history, from the foundation of Rome
Romain histoire depuis fondation
 to the destruction of the Roman empire.—2. What an
jusqu'à — m quelle

unhappy situation is that which obliges a father in his own
fâcheuse — celle obliger père dans propre
 defence to expose the failings of his children!—3. The
défense à révéler faute enfant

triumph was decreed to Cæsar, an honour he well deserved.
triomphe c décerner César honneur qu' mériter B bien

—3. Raphael excelled in expression, a rare talent in
— exceller B dans l' — — — chez
 painters.
les peintre.

SECTION IV.

Cases in which no Article is used in either Language.

RULE 14.—*No article before proper Names.*

✚ No article is used in either language before the word *Dieu* in the singular, and taken in a general sense, nor before the proper names of *men, women, towns, days, months, or heathen Gods*; examples:

God is merciful.

Peter is dead.

Dieu est miséricordieux.

Pierre est mort.

not *le Dieu*, nor *le Pierre* est mort; but we say; *le Dieu des Chrétiens, le dieu de la guerre, les dieux et les demi-dieux.*

We must except from this rule, 1. many Italian authors, such as *le Tasse, l'Arioste, &c.*—2. Proper names used to denote an individual distinction, such as *l'Athalie de Racine, la Mérope de Voltaire.* 3. The proper names in the plural, which take the definite article; such as, *les Cicérons sont rares, les Homères, les Virgiles, les Démosthènes.*

Aristotle and *Plato* flourished in the age of *Philip* and
 — *te* *Platon* fleurir c siècle m *Philippe*
Alexander. *London* and *Paris* are the two greatest capitals
 d' —dre —dres plus grand —le f
 in Europe. Come and see me on *friday* or *saturday.* Sep-
 de l' — venir H * me voir * *Vendredi Samedi*
tember and *October* are two fine months in England. *Jupiter*
 —bre —bre beau mois *Angleterre* —
Mars, and *Venus* were heathen divinities. *Demosthenes* and
 — *Vénus* B païenne divinité r
Cicero were two great orators; the former flourished at
 B grand orateur premier fleurir c à
Athens, and the latter at *Rome.*
Athènes second —

RULE 15.—*No article before Pronouns.*

No article is used in either language before a substantive preceded by any pronoun whatever; examples:

My book.

This watch.

What news.

Mon livre

cette montre

quelle nouvelle.

The pronoun *quelqu'un*, somebody; *plusieurs*, many; *per-sonne*, nobody; and *rien*, nothing; which are used without a substantive, take no article before them; example: *plusieurs le disent*, many say so; not *les plusieurs* le disent.

My brother and sister learn geography.
frère 63 *sœur* apprendre (ir) *géographie* 9

No one becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.
personne ne devenir débauché vertueux tout d'un coup
 Nothing can be more intolerable than a fortunate fool.
rien ne pouvoir (ir) plus insupportable qu' heureux sot.
 Whoever spares the bad, does harm to the good. This
quiconque épargner méchans faire (ir) tort bons
 watch is new; give it to your sister.
montre f neuf H la sœur

RULE 16.—*de* after *sorte*, *genre*, &c.

✧ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French, after the words, *sorte*, *genre*, or any other of the same signification; example:

Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities.
homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.

N. B. This rule is of very great extent, and requires particular attention.

There are two kinds of curiosity, the one of interest,
il y a sorte f —le l'une intérêt
 which incites us to desire to learn what may
porter 48 à désirer d'apprendre ce qui pouvoir (ir) A
 be useful to us; and the other of pride, which proceeds from
nous être utile l'autre orgueil venir
 the desire of knowing what others are ignorant of. (Old age),
*désir de savoir ce que les autres * ignorer A * vieillesse f*
 is a sort of tyrant, who forbids, under pain of death, all the
sorte tyran défendre sous peine mort
 pleasures of youth. Politeness is a mixture of discretion, com-
plaisir 4 jeunesse 9 politesse mélange m discrétion com-
 placency and circumspection. Praises are a kind of tribute
plaisance circonspection louange 9 sorte tribut
 (that is paid) to true merit. There is in goodness a kind of
qu'on paye 4 vrai mérite m il y a dans 4 bonté sorte
 magnet which attracts all men to itself. The hieroglyphics
aimant attirer 106 soi hiéroglyphes
 of the Egyptians were figures of men, birds, animals, and
Egyptien B —7 oiseau —
 reptiles.

RULE 17.—*Transposition of Words.*

✧ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the nature, matter, species, qualities, or country of the first.

The English often put the genitive first. This transposition of words is not allowed in French, and the order must be reversed; examples:

Burgundy wine. A gold watch. A chamber-maid.
du vin de Bourgogne. une montre d'or. une femme de chambre
 as if it were some wine of Burgundy, a watch of gold; and
 so on for others.

The galleries of the House of Commons are supported
galerie Chambre f des Commune soutenir
 by slender iron pillars, ornamented with corinthian capitals.
de petit fer pilier ornés de corinthien chapiteau
 Burgundy wine is very dear in England. The English
Bourgogne vin 9 cher en Angleterre Anglois
 cannot manufacture their superfine cloth without
ne pouvoir (ir) A —rer —fin drap sans
 Spanish wool. I always wear silk-stockings in summer.
Espagne laine porter toujours soie bas 7 en été
 On the first day of every parliament, the four representatives
** chaque parlement représentant*
 of the city of London appear in scarlet-gowns, and sit
cité Londres paroître en écarlate robe s'asseoir (ir)
 near the speaker.
auprès du président.

Socrates' wisdom and Achilles' valour are celebrated in
sagesse valeur célébré dans
 the writings of historians. The character of Esop's fables
écrit des —rien caractère m des Esope — f
 is simple nature. O happiness! our being's end, for thee
la — — bonheur être fin 49
 we live, for thee we dare to die.
*vivre (ir) oser * mourir*

RULE 18.—Preposition de.

✱ No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after the following adverbs of quantity, scarcity, or exclusion;

<i>assez,*</i>	enough.	<i>pas or point,</i>	no.
<i>autant,</i>	as much.	<i>peu,</i>	little.
<i>beaucoup,</i>	much.	<i>plus,</i>	more.
<i>° combien,</i>	how many.	<i>rien,</i>	nothing.
<i>jamais,</i>	never,	<i>tant,</i>	so many.
<i>moins,</i>	less.	<i>trop.</i>	too much.

Also after the words *nombre*, number; *quantité*, quantity; *livre*, pound; *mesure*, measure; *aune*, ell; *verge*, yard; *boisseau*, bushel; and after any other words of quantity; examples:

* *Assez*, enough, is placed after the substantive in English, and always before in French; as, he has riches enough, *il a assez de richesses*.

Much bread and little meat. More prudence.
beaucoup de pain et peu de viande. plus de prudence.

A pound of cheese. A bushel of coals.
une livre de fromage. un boisseau de charbon.

Nevertheless, the article is used after *la plupart*, the most part; and after *bien*, used in the sense of *beaucoup*. Thus we say, *il a bien des amis*, with an article; and *il a beaucoup d'amis*, without any article; he has many friends.

Those who govern are like celestial bodies, which have
ceux gouverner comme céleste corps 2
 much brightness and no rest. Few people have prudence
beaucoup éclat point repos peu gens —
 enough to avoid bad company, and to distrust
assez pour éviter mauvais compagnie 9 *pour se défier*
 themselves. Mothers have often (too much) indulgence
d'eux-mêmes mère 9 *souvent trop* —
 for their children. The few vestiges which remain of the
enfant le peu — *rester*
 brilliant actions of the Greeks and Romans, are found
brillant — *Grec* 21 *Romains se trouvent*
 in Plutarch and several other historians. Authors
dans Plutarque 21 *plusieurs autre historien* *auteur*
 derive more eloquence, force and grandeur, from the choice
tirer plus — 21 — — *choix*
 and disposition of words, than from any other cause. Few
 21 — *mot que d'aucune* — *f peu*
 things (are necessary) to make a wise man happy. Give me
chose suffire (ir) pour rendre sage heureux *H moi*
 two hundred pounds of butter, five yards of ribband, and a
cent livre beurre verge ruban
 great quantity of coals.
 —*té charbon. sing.*

RULE 19.—*de*, after an adjective.

✶ No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used before a substantive governed in the genitive case by an adjective or a participle, followed in English by the preposition *of*, *from*, *by*, or *with*; examples:

Full of charms. Endowed with virtue. Esteemed by all.
plein de charmes doué de vertu estimé de tous
 Human life is full of disappointments. (To die) for one's
humain vie 9 *plein* *revers* *Mourir* *son*
 country, is a death full of charms. A noble but confused
pays mort charme —29 —*se*
 thought is a diamond covered with dust. If fortune has
pensée diamant couvert poussière —*f 4*
 blessed you with her gifts, if besides you are endowed
favorisé 48 *don* *outré cela* *doué*

with wit and judgment, be not puffed up with pride, and
esprit 21 jugement ne vous enflent pas orgueil*
do not contemn others. No one is fit for friendship,
mépriser les autres on n'est pas propre à l'amitié
who is not endowed with virtue. Whoever attacks the
quand on doué vertu quiconque attaquer
sacred person of a king, is guilty of high treason.
sacré personne f roi coupable haut trahison.

RULE 20.—*The Article in several other cases.*

1. No article is used in either language, before a noun which forms but one idea with the verb antecedent; which is known when they are or could be both expressed by one word in English? examples:

To envy. To visit. To pity. and so on.
porter envie rendre visite avoir pitié

2. Before a noun which forms a kind of adverb with the preposition antecedent; such are *avec ardeur*, for *ardement*; with eagerness; *sans consideration*, without consideration; and when the substantive is not particularised.

3. Before the cardinal numbers, one, two, three four, five, six, &c. examples:

Lend me twenty pounds. I have six oranges.
prêtez-moi vingt livres J'ai six oranges

The article must be used before the cardinal numbers, if the noun to which they are joined have a fixed number; such as, *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; *les neuf muses*, the nine muses; and also if it be specified; as, *les deux lettres que j'ai écrites*, the two lettres which I have written; *le dix de Janvier*, the tenth of January.—These exceptions are not difficult, because they are the same in both languages.

1. Those who speak without reflection are exposed to
ceux parler sans réflexion exposés
many errors.—2. We often do by self-love what we
bien 18 erreur 172 faire (ir) amour-propre ce que
think we do through (good nature).—3. Bibliographers
croire (ir) par bienveillance —phe*
arrange books in five principal classes; divinity, jurispru-
—ger livre en — — théologie —
dence, history, polite lettres, and arts.—3. The mouth of the
histoire belle lettre f — embouchure
Danube has five large canals in the (Euxine sea).—3. The
— m grand — Pont Euxin
temple of Solomon was begun four hundred and eighty
*— m Sa— c commencé * quatre-*
years after the departure of the Israelites from Egypt.—4.
vingts départ — Egypte
I have pity (on the) poor.
pitié des pauvre pl

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the ARTICLES.

Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of
secret 9 *clef* 4 — — *—aire* m
 wisdom. Cares and infelicities are often the attendants of
sagesse 4 *soin* 9 *malheur* 10 *souvent* *compagnon*
 greatness. Lewis the fourteenth was the protector of sci-
grandeur 4 *Louis* 11 *c* — *—leur* 4
 ences. The English language abounds with writings ad-
 — *Anglois* *langue* f *abonder* *en* *écrit* a-
 dressed to the imagination and feelings; the inventive
dressé — 21 *sentiment* *créateur*
 powers of Shakespear, the sublime conceptions of Milton,
esprit sing. 14 — *pensée*
 the strength and harmony of Pope, the delicacy of Addison,
force f — *—nie* *délicatesse*
 and the pathetic simplicity of Sterne, render them comparable
pathétique — *té* *rendre* 48 —
 with the best authors among the ancients.

à *meilleur* *auteur* *parmi* *ancien*
 Some thieves having broken into a gentleman's house,
 7 *voleurs* *étant* *entrés* *dans* *la* *particulier* 17
 went to the footman's bed, and told him, that if he
aller (ir) c *domestique* *lit* 17 *lui* *dire* (ir) c
 moved, he was a dead man. I am sure, replied he, that if
remuer B B *mort* *sûr* *répliqua-t-il*
 I move, I am alive.

A *en* *vie*
 Envy judges of actions by the persons who perform them;
envie 9 *juger* — 4 *par* *personne* *faire* (ir) 48
 but equity judges of persons by their actions. When God
équité 4 *quand* 14
 deprives us of any thing that is dear to us, such as wife,
priver 48 *quelque* *chose* f *cher* 47 *telle* *que* *femme*
 children, friends, or fortune, we must submit without
enfant *ami* — f *devoir* *à* *nous* *y* *soumettre* *sans*
 murmur or complaint. Mutual benevolence is the bond of
murmure *et* *sans* *plainte* *mutuel* *bienveillance* 9 *lien* 4
 society; without it, life is grievous, full of fear, and void
société f *sans* *elle* *vie* 9 *à* *charge* *pleine* 19 *crainte* *sans*
 of comfort. Few people deny the truth of the gospel, and
 * *consolation* *peu* 18 *gens* *nier* *vérité* *évangile* m
 yet many live as if it was not true. The
cependant *plusieurs* *vivre* (ir) *comme* *s'il* B *vrai*
 Portuguese send every year a fleet to Brazil, to
 — *gais* *envoyer* (ir) *tous* *les* *ans* *flottes* *au* *Brésil* *pour*
 bring cotton, amber, saltpetre, and many other articles.
apporter *coton* 7 *ambre* *salpêtre* m *plusieurs* *chose*
 Cæsar's first attempt on Britain took place fifty-five years
 17 *attaque* *Bretagne* f *eut* *lieu* *cinquante-cinq* *an*

before the birth of Jesus Christ. Possession without right
avant naissance — 9 *droit* 4

is in many cases of property a better title than right without
plusieurs cas propriété meilleur titre m sans
 possession; but it is not the same in cases of respect
 4 *mais ce la même chose en fait* —

and consideration. The sins particularly forbidden in the
 21 — *péché* — *lièrement défendus*

gospel, are sensual lusts, covetousness, anger, envy,
évangile les plaisirs des sens, avarice 10 colère f envie
 hatred, pride, vanity, theft, and falsehood. The action of the
haine f orgueil — té vol fausseté

great Scipio, when he added to the fortune of a young prin-
grand Scipion quand ajouter c — f jeune prin-
 cess he had taken prisoner, all the money which her friends
cesse qu'il a faite prisonnière argent ami

brought him to ransom her, has done him no less
lui apporter c pour sa rançon ne lui a pas fait moins 18
 honour than his famous conquests.
honneur fameux conquête f

Geography gives a true description of the terrestrial
géographie donner vrai — terrestre
 globe; the globe has an imaginary axis, and is surrounded
 — m — *naire axe m environné*

with imaginary circles; the axis is a line passing through the
 19 *cercles ligne f qui passe par*
 centre of the earth, upon which the whole earth turns like
 — m *sur lequel toute la tourne comme*

a wheel upon the axle-tree. Machiavel (lays down) for
roue f essieu établir
 maxims in the art of governing, artifice, stratagem,
 — *me dans — gouverner — 9 10 — gème*

(despotic power,) injustice, and irreligion. Christopher
despotisme — — — phe
 Columbus, who discovered America in 1492, was a Genoese,
Colomb découvrir c en B 12. Génois

a great seaman, and the best geographer of his age.
marin géographe siècle m

CHAPTER II.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE 21.—Two Substantives in the same Case.

✧ When there is a conjunction between two nouns, they must be put in the same case; and if there be a preposition before the first, it must be repeated before all others; example:

You are in a state of doubt, fear, and distrust :
vous êtes dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.
 as if it were of doubt, of fear, and of distrust.

Criticism examines the merit of literary productions
critique f —ner mérite m littéraire — 2
 under the three general heads of thought, arrangement, and
sous point de pensée 4 ordre
 expression. One day spent in the practice of virtue and

— *un jour passé dans pratique f vertu 4*
 religion, is better than a whole life spent in impiety and
 — *vaut mieux que — entier vie passée impiété 4*
 wickedness. Justice is obedience to written laws and

méchanceté 9 — f obéissance 4 écrit loi 2
 constitutions. Corrupted men and of ill lives easily

— *corrompu 9 mauvaise vie aisément*
 believe that there is no more virtue, probity, and sin-

172 *croire (ir) A il n'y a pas plus 18 —té*
 cerity in others than in themselves. The rules of civility
 — *—té dans les autres eux-mêmes règle 4 honnêteté*

are those of decency and good manners.

celles bienséance 4 2 mœurs f

RULE 22.—Genitive Case.

✠ The latter of two substantives is generally put in the genitive case in French, whether it be in the genitive or dative in English ; example :

The impious are enemies to virtue.

les impies sont les ennemis de la vertu—not à la vertu.

Our consciousness of good and evil shews us what
connaissance bien 4 21 mal montre 47 quelle
 ought to be the rule to govern our actions. Pleasure is
*doit * règle f pour diriger — plaisir 9*

often an enemy to reason and virtue. The corruption
souvent l' raison 4 21 —

of the heart is often the cause of the corruption of the mind.
cœur — f esprit

Peru has rich mines of gold, silver, and diamonds.

Pérou m 5 — 7 or, argent, 21 diamant

RULE 23.—Nouns in the Dative.

1. When two substantives are joined together, so as to make a compound word ; that which is the first in English is put the second in French, and is usually preceded by the preposition *à*, when it expresses the use of the first ; examples :

Silk worms.

des vers à soie

A wind-mill.

un moulin à vent

A patch-box.

boîte à mouches.

as if it were, worms to silk, a mill to wind, a box to patch.

2. It is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it is the name of something good to eat or drink; examples:

The hay-market. The rabbit-man.
Le marché au foin. *l'homme aux lapins*

1. Many pretend that battles are not so bloody since
Plusieurs prétendre bataille 9 si sanglant depuis
the invention of fire arms.—2. Where is the cream-pot?
— feu armes où crème f —

1. There are a (great many) silk worms in Italy.
*il y a * beaucoup 18 soie ver en Italie*

1. Go into the dining-room, the company is there.
aller (ir) H dans manger salle f compagnie y est
—2. I have been to the fish-market, however I have bought
poisson marché cependant acheter

no fish, because it was too dear.—2. The oyster-woman is
18 *parce qu'il y a trop cher hûîtres femme*
at the door.—2. I have broken the milk pot.—1. I always
porte f casser lait — 172

keep fire-arms in my bed-room for my safety during
garder feu armes 7 coucher chambre f sûreté pendant
the night; I have no gunpowder at present; thus my
nuit n'ai point de canon poudre à ainsi
fire-arms are useless.

inutile

RULE 24.—Collective General.

A noun collective general (such as *peuple*, *nation*, *flotte*, *armée*, &c.) requires that the verb, the adjective or pronouns which have reference to it, be always put in the singular in French; example:

The army of the confederates is very numerous.
l'armée des confédérés est très-nombreuse.

Is it necessary that (the whole universe) (should arm
nécessaire tout l'univers s'armer f
itself) to destroy one man? A drop of water (is enough)
pour détruire goutte eau suffire (ir)
to kill him. The society of men would soon be overturned,
pour le tuer société 4 bientôt 172 détruite
if (every one) could (with impunity) take from
chacun pouvoir (ir) B impunément ôter à un
another what he should think proper. The people wish
autre ce qu' juger à propos peuple m désirer
for peace; but the parliament, who know best the in-
** 4 paix parlement connaître mieux in-*
terests of the nation, have voted for the continuation of the
tirét — voter —
war. The grand fleet set sail yesterday. The
guerre flotte mettre (ir) c à la voile hier

enemy presented themselves before the gates of our town,
 sing. *présenter c se devant porte ville*
 and began the attack on Tuesday: our garrison made a
*commencer c attaque * mardi garnison faire (ir) c*
 sally on Thursday, and obliged them to raise the siege.
*sortie * jeudi obliger c 48 à lever —*

RULE 25.—Collective Partitive.

The verbs, the adjectives and pronouns, which have reference to a collective partitive (such as *nombre, foule, beaucoup, &c.*) agree in gender and number with the noun following; example:

A great number of friends remained attached to me.
un grand nombre d'amis me restèrent attachés.

If, however, the collective partitive were preceded by the definite article, *le la, les*, it should govern the adjective, the pronoun, and the verb in the singular number; example:

The number of the inhabitants amounts to 1000 men.

le nombre des habitans monte à 1000 hommes.*

The crowd of soldiers who came obliged us to retire.

foule f soldats, venir c obliger c 48 à nous retirer

A multitude of inhabitants abandoned their country. A

—f habitant abandonner c pays

crowd of children ran after him.

troupe enfans courir (ir) c après 49

A crowd of nymphs crowned with flowers swam behind the car of the goddess. When the unbelievers invaded

char déesse quand infidèle envahir c

Spain, an innumerable multitude of inhabitants retired

Espagne 5 innombrable — f se retirer c
 into the Asturias, where they proclaimed Pelagius for

*les —ies où proclamer c Pélage **
 their king.

roi

CHAPTER III.

OF ADJECTIVES.—Page 20.

This chapter is divided into four sections. The first treats of the concord of adjectives; the second of their

* Unless *la plupart* be followed by a noun singular, the verb which comes after it is always put in the plural; example: *la plupart du monde le croit; la plupart le croient; la plupart des jeunes gens le croient.*

government; the third of the adjectives of dimension; and the fourth of comparatives and superlatives.

SECTION I.

Of the Concord and Place of Adjectives.

RULE 26.—*Adjectives are declinable.*

☞ All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they are joined or relative; example:

Good bread, meat and apples.
de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bonnes pommes.

N. B. It may be seen by this example, that whenever the adjective is placed before several substantives in English, it must be repeated before every one in French, and agree with each of them.

Marriage is the most perfect state of friendship; it lessens our cares by dividing them, and doubles our pleasures by mutual participation. Our minister has profound judgment, invariable industry, and a very extensive knowledge of the interests of foreign courts. The victory which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful to his country, pernicious to the Romans, and dismal to human nature.

*9 Mariage 44 plus parfait état 4 amitié
diminuer soin en divisant 48 doubler plaisir
par mutuel 2 — —tre un profond jugement, invariable industrie, et une très-étendue con-
naissance intérêt étranger cour 2 victoire
César gagner c plaine f Pharsale c funeste
pays —cieux Romains désastreux
pour 2 humain genre m*

RULE 27.—*The adjective agrees with the last Noun.*

If an adjective or a participle come in English immediately before several substantives, it is put after them in French, and usually agrees with the last only; example:

Lewis XIV had in France an absolute power and authority.
Louis XIV avoit en France un pouvoir et une autorité absolue
or *Louis XIV avoit en France une autorité et un pouvoir absolu.*

If the adjective were any of those mentioned in rule 30, it should be repeated before each substantive; example:

Louis XIV avoit un grand pouvoir et une grande autorité.

Garrick played with charming taste and nobleness.
représenter B avec un charmant goût 10 noblesse
 Sylla acquired in Rome an absolute power and authority.
acquérir (ir) c à absolu pouvoir 10 autorité
 The English fight at sea with wonderful courage
combattre (ir) sur mer un surprenant —
 and intrepidity. In most courtiers we find
10 intrépidité dans la plupart des courtisan on ne trouve
 nothing but an affected politeness and sincerity. She has her
** qu' affecté politesse sincérité la*
 mouth and eyes shut.
bouche f yeux fermé

RULE 28.—Adjectives in the Plural.

1. If there be a verb between them, the adjectives or participles which have reference to several substantives are always put in the plural, though the nouns be in the singular ; examples :

His father and brother are very learned.
son père et son frère sont très-savans. pl. m.
 His mother and sister are handsome.
sa mère et sa sœur sont belles. pl. f.

2. If the substantives be of different genders, the adjectives and participles which come after the verb, and have reference to them, are always put in the plural masculine ; example :

Your brother and sister are prudent and wise.
votre frère et votre sœur sont prudens et sages. pl. m.

2. Modesty and disinterestedness deserve to be praised
9 —tie 10 désintéressement mériter d louer
 and admired.—2. The room and the closet were open,
—rer chambre f cabinet B ouvert
 but the window and the drawer were shut.—2. Men and
fenêtre f tiroir B fermer
 women are mortal.—1. My mother and sister are dead.—2.
femme mortel mère 63 sœur mort
 His son and daughter are happy.—2. Your courage and
fils 63 fille heureux —
 boldness seem astonishing to me.—2. Pride and misery are
63 hardiesse paroître étonnant 47 9 orgueil 10 misère f ne
 but too often united.—9. Health, favour and power are
sont que trop souvent unir 9 santé 10 faveur pouvoir
 common to the good and wicked, and can be taken from
commun 6 bons 10 méchant peuvent nous être ôté
 us ;—1. but glory and virtue are solid, sure, and lasting.—2.
9 gloire 10 solide — durable

(There are) some persons whose courage and virtue need
il y a 7 personne 80 9 — 10 ont besoin
 not be sustained.
d'être soutenir

RULE 29.—Place of Adjectives.

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they are usually placed after it, and a conjunction is put before the last, whether there is one or not in English; examples:

A just and bountiful God. A long tedious book.
un Dieu juste et bienfaisant un livre long et ennuyeux.

Great and extensive projects joined to a wise execution
7 vaste projet joindre sage —
 constitute the great minister. A shallow argument has
faire (ir) ministre foible —
 often persuaded persons who had not been convinced
souvent persuader 7 personnes f E convaincu
 by palpable and evident proofs. Courtiers often (flatter
— — 7 preuve f courtisan souvent 172 se
 themselves) that under a young liberal prince, they
flatter sous jeune — —
 (shall be able) to attain to a power which they never would
*pouvoir (ir) * arriver poste m 120*
 hope for (in the) service of an old frugal prince. Brave and
*n'espérer * au — m âgé économe — —*
 trusty men are generally humane and merciful; while
constant généralement humain miséricordieux pendant
 men of base and low mind are usually insolent
que un bas rampant esprit ordinairement —
 and tyrannical, when they have power. A plain, simple, and
— que quand autorité 7 uni —
 natural style is the only one (to be recommended).
*—rel — m seul * recommandable*

RULE 30.—Adjective put before the Substantive.

17 The following adjectives, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre, petit, saint, vicieux*; also the adjectives of numbers, and the possessive, demonstrative, and indeterminate pronouns, precede in French, as in English, the substantive to which they are joined; example:

A good boy. A good girl.
un bon garçon, une bonne fille.
 not *un garçon bon, une fille bonne.*

A good king often loses, by the ill-conduct of
roi souvent 172 perdre mauvais conduite f

his ministers, the affection of his subjects. Socrates and
 —tre — sujet —
 Plato were two great philosophers. Young men hope that
 Platon B —phe les jeunes gens espérer *
 they shall live long, but no one is sure he shall live
 * * vivre long-temps personne n' sûr * de
 till to-morrow. Little geniuses are dazzled with (every thing)
 jusqu'à demain 2 Petit(génie éblouir de tout
 that sparkles, because every thing) is new to them; great
 ce qui briller parce que tout nouveau pour eux 2
 geniuses, (on the) contrary, admire but few things, because
 au contraire n'admirer que peu 18 f parce que
 few things appear new to them. (How many) books have
 peu paraître nouveau 47 combien 18 livre
 you got? I have two grammars and one exercise book. Is
 * grammairie livre de thèmes
 your father at home? No, sir; but my mother is, and she
 92 à la maison non y est
 will be glad to see you.
 bien aise de vous voir

RULE 31.—Adjective put after the Substantive.

✎ The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule are usually placed in French after the substantive which they qualify; examples:

Cold weather. A round table. The public good.
 un temps froid une table ronde le bien public.
 not un froid temps, une ronde table, le public bien.

Humility is the basis of christian virtues. A prejudiced
 9 — té base f chrétien 2 prévenu
 mind is the source of innumerable errors. The public good
 esprit —f 16 innombrable erreur bien
 is preferable to private interest. Satirical minds are like
 — particulier intérêt 2 9 —que esprit comme
 small insects, whose existence is manifested only by the efforts
 petits insecte 2 dont — ne se manifeste que —
 which they make to corrupt things. Geography is the
 faire (ir) pour corrompre 9 9 Géographie
 description of the terrestrial globe. A silent awe, a doubtful
 — —tre —m silencieux respect timide
 eye, and a hesitating voice, are the natural indications of a
 œil tremblant voix —rel marque f
 true and respectful love. The central fire is the physical
 vrai 29 —tueux amour — feu —que
 cause of the heat of the subterraneous springs.
 —f chaleur souterrain source f

SECTION II.

*Of the Government of Adjectives.*RULE 32.—*Adjectives which govern the Genitive.*

☞ The adjectives and participles which signify *plenty* or *scarcity*, as well as those followed in English by the preposition *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*, are generally followed in French by the preposition *de* without any article; examples:

Life is full of miseries. I am satisfied with you.
la vie est pleine de misères. Je suis content de vous.
 not *est pleine des misères*, nor *Je suis content avec vous.*

Nature is content with little. I am fatigued with running.
 — *se contente peu fatigué courir*

He is accused of robbery. You are loaded with honours.
 — *sé vol comblé honneur*

They are worthy of praise. Human life is never free from troubles. Most men are dissatisfied with their condition.
 — *digne louange humain 31 vie 120 exempt*

We are in vain endued with reason, if we are not endued with virtue. Xerxes being loaded with all the advantages of
 — *la plupart des mécontent*
en — doué raison

body and of fortune, and yet being not satisfied with them,
comblé avantage

proposed a reward to him who should invent new
corps 4 10 — f cependant n'en étant pas satisfait

pleasures for him.
 — *ser c récompense celui qui inventer E nouveau*

plaisir 8 49

RULE 33.—*Adjectives which govern the Dative.*

The adjectives which denote *aptness*, *fitness*, *inclination*, *ease*, or *readiness*, govern the noun in the dative with *à*, *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, according to its gender and number; and the verb in the present of the infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, whatever case or preposition they govern in English; examples:

He is fit for any thing. Are you ready to go out?
il est propre à tout. êtes-vous prêt à sortir?

Most children are inclined to idleness. A disturbed
la plupart des enfans enclin paresse 4 troublé 31

mind is not fit to discharge its duty. A christian
esprit propre remplir 68 devoir chrétien

ought to be ready to die, rather than deny his faith.
*devoir A * prêt mourir plutôt que de renier foi*

It is ridiculous to put one's-self in a passion against objects
*il — le de mettre se 48 en * colère contre objet 7*
 which are insensible of * our anger. I am sensible of your
colère

kindness. That is easy to say. Marshy places are
bonté cela facile dire marécageux 31 lieu 9
 liable to heavy fogs.
sujet épais 31 brouillard 7

RULE 34.—*Adjectives followed by à and envers.*

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in English by the preposition *in*; such are *curieux à*, curious *in*; *exact à*, precise *in*; *habile à*, skilful *in*; *zélé à*, zealous *in*; &c. Some others take the preposition *envers*; such are, *affable, civil, cruel* and all those which signify behaviour towards others; example:

Young people should be civil to every body.
les jeunes gens doivent être honnêtes envers tout le monde.

Merchants should be precise in fulfilling their engagements,
marchand devoir A exact remplir
 and christians patient in suffering injuries. Your brother is
chrétien — souffrir 9 — re

skilful in (doing every thing.) Scipio Africanus was
habile tout faire Scipion l'Africain B

respectful to his mother, liberal to his sisters, good to his
— tuteur mère libéral sœurs bon

servants, just and affable to every body. I do not like
domestique juste — tout le monde aimer

people who are cruel to animals.
personnes f — —

SECTION III.

Adjectives of Dimension.

RULE 35.—*How to express the Adjectives of Dimension.*

☞ The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in French by an adjective or a substantive. Thus, *high* can be expressed by *de haut* or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *de long*, or *de longueur*; *wide* by *de large*, or *de largeur*; but *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*, not by *de profond*; and, in general, the substantive is more elegantly used than the adjective, example:

* Sensible and insensible govern the dative in French, and the genitive in English.

A house eighty-feet long and forty high.
une maison de 80 pieds de longueur et de 40 de hauteur.
 not *une maison quatre-vingts pieds longue et quarante haute.*

Observe to put *de* before the numbers, *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.* when they are not preceded by a verb, and also before the words of dimension, *hauteur, profondeur, &c.*

The monument of London is a round pillar of the
— —dres rond 31 pilier
 doric order, two hundred feet high; it stands on a
31 — que ordre cents pied est placé sur
 pedestal twenty feet high. The room of the Tower (in
piédestal vingt pied salle tour
 which) is the royal train of artillery, is an apartment three
où 31 train 16 —rie appartement
 hundred and eighty feet long, fifty wide, and twenty
** quatre-vingts cinquante vingt*
 high; it has a passage (in the) middle sixteen feet wide, on
f — au milieu seize pied de
 each side of which the artillery is placed.
chaque côté duquel placé

RULE 36.—*Adjectives of Dimension take avoir.*

✎ The English make use of the verb *to be*, when they want to express the height, depth, or breadth of an object; and the French of the verb *avoir*. In this case, *de* is left out before the word of number; example:

That house is fifty feet long.
cette maison a cinquante pieds de longueur, not est 50, &c.

London-bridge is nine hundred feet long, forty-three
Londres 17 pont cents pied quarante
 high, and seventy-three wide. Westminster-bridge is
soixante-treize Westminster 17 pont
 forty-four feet broad; the (free way) under the arches
quarante-quatre passage sous —
 of this bridge is eight hundred and seventy feet; it
*ce * soixante-et-dix il*
 consists of fourteen piers, thirteen large arches, and
est composé pile f 21 treize grand — f
 two small ones; the two middle piers are each seventeen
*petit * du milieu 17 chacun dix-sept*
 feet wide, and contain two hundred tons of solid
contenir tonneau solide 31
 stones; all the others decrease in breadth by a foot on
pierre autre diminuer en largeur d'un pied de
 each side. The (coffee-trees) are commonly forty feet
chaque côté cafier ordinairement quarante

high; they yield twice a year an abundant crop. The
donner deux fois l'an *abondant* 31 *récolte f*
 famous mine of Potosi in Peru, is more than fifteen hun-
fameux — f — dans le Pérou 39 *quinze*
 dred feet deep.

SECTION IV.

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

The comparative of equality is made by putting *si*, *aussi*, or *autant* before the adjective; that of superiority, by putting *plus*; and that of inferiority, by putting *moins*; when there are two or more adjectives, the sign of comparison is repeated before every one.

RULE 37.—as expressed by *que*.

☞ The word *as*, used in English after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expressed in French by *que*, and never by *comme*; examples:

He is as learned as you. I am not so old as he.
il est aussi savant que vous. Je ne suis pas si âgé que lui.

N. B. When there are two *as*, the first is expressed by *aussi*, as in the example above.

The love of our neighbour is as necessary in so-
*amour du * prochain* *nécessaire dans 4 so-*
 ciety for the happiness of life, as in christianity for eter-
ciété *bonheur 4 vie 4 — nisme éter-*
 nal salvation. Great talents are of every condition; and
nel 31 4 salut 2 — toute —

if they do not shine so commonly in low people as in
** briller si communément dans 2 bas peuple in*

others, it is for want of care and cultivation. The man
*les autres ce * faute de soin d'être cultivés*

truly great, preserves his judgment (in the) midst of
véritablement conserver jugement au milieu 4
 dangers with (as much) presence of mind, as if he (was
— avec autant 18 présence esprit ne cou-
 not in) any danger. It is as easy to do good as to do
rir (ir) B aucun aisé de faire le bien faire le

evil. Nothing delights (so much) as the works of nature.
mal rien ne plait tant ouvrage 4 —

The Thames is not so rapid as the Rhine. Paris is not so
Tamise f rapide Rhin — 14

populous as London.
peuple — dres

RULE 38.—by expressed by de.

The word *by*, which is often used in English after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is expressed in French by *de*, and never by *par*; example:

Your father is richer than mine by much.

vosre père est plus riche que le mien de beaucoup.

The condor is a bird of Peru, bigger than the ostrich
— oiseau du Pérou plus grand autruche
 by much. The goddess Calypso was taller than all her
beaucoup déesse — B plus grand que
 nymphs by (the whole head.) I am older than you by two
nymphes toute la tête plus âgé que
 years; however, you are taller than I by two inches. Your
ans cependant plus grand moi pouce
 son is more learned than mine by much.
filis plus savant 69 beaucoup

RULE 39.—than expressed by que, or by de.

☞ The word *than*, which comes in English after a comparative. is expressed in French by *que* before a noun or a pronoun, and by *de* before the cardinal numbers, one, two, three, &c. examples:

He is taller than you. He is more than twenty
Il est plus grand que vous. Il a plus de vingt
 years of age.
ans

Augustus was not perhaps a greater man than Anthony,
*Auguste 14 B peut-être * Antoine*
 but he was more fortunate. Nothing is more pleasing to the
B heureux 112 agréable
 mind than the light of truth. The simplicity of nature is
esprit lumière & vérité —té 4 —
 more amiable than all the embellishments of art. Is there
aimable —lissement 4 — y a-t-il
 (any thing) more natural than to love those who do us
rien de —rel d'aimer ceux faire (ir) 47
 good? The consumption of wheat in London is more than
bien 7 consommation f de blé à —dres de plus
 five millions and ninety thousand bushels a year,
*cinq — * quatre-vingt-dix mille boisseau par an*
 that of oxen and cows more than one hundred and twenty
*celle bœuf 21 vache * cent * vingt*
 thousand, and that of sheep and lambs more than nine hun-
celle mouton 21 agneau
 dred thousand. Virtue is more precious than riches. Lewis
& vertu précieux & richesses Louis

the fourteenth, in 1681, had sixty thousand sailors, and more
 11 en B soixante matelots
 than a hundred men of war.
 * vaisseau guerre

RULE 40.—*than* expressed by *que de*, and *que ne*.

✧ The word *than*, which comes after a comparative, is expressed by *que de*, when the next verb is in the present of the infinitive; and usually by *que ne*, when the next verb is in any tense of the indicative mood; examples:

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge.

il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger.

Your son is more learned and wise *than* I thought.

*votre fils est plus savant et plus sage que je ne pensois**

It is greater to overcome one's passions, *than* to conquer
il grand de vaincre ses — conquérir
 whole nations. There are some authors who write better
entières 31 — 7 il y a 7 auteur écrire mieux
than they speak, and (some others) who speak better *than*
parler d'autres

they write. You make greater progress *than* I should have
faire (ir) 8 progrès
 thought; and you behave better *than* when you were young.
penser se conduire mieux B jeune

We flatter ourselves more *than* we should. It is harder to
*se flatter * plus devoir E difficile*
 avoid censure *than* to gain applause; for the
d'éviter censure gagner des applaudissemens
 latter may (be obtained) by one great action: but
dernier m pl pouvoir (ir) A s'obtenir mais

to avoid the former, (a man) must never do wrong.
pour éviter premier f on ne devoir A jamais mal
 Religion teaches us to suffer injuries patiently,
 9 — apprendre (ir) à 47 souffrir 9 — re patiemment
rather than to revenge.
plutôt nous venger.

RULE 41.—*the more* expressed by *plus*.

✧ The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never. Thus *the more* is expressed by *plus*, and *the less* by *moins*, not by *le plus*, or *le moins*, which are used only in superlatives; example:

* Ne is left out, when there is a conjunction between *que* and the verb; example: *je me porte mieux que quand j'étois en France*; not *que quand je n'étois en France*.

The more I study French, the more I like it.

plus j'étudie le François, plus je l'aime.
not, le plus j'étudie le François, le plus je l'aime.

The more I know mankind, the less I value life.
connoître les hommes estimer 9 vie

The more a man is adorned with moderation, temperance,
doué 32 — 21 —

and justice, the more valuable is he. The more an hy-
— il est estimable

dropic drinks, the more thirsty he is. The less
— pique boire (ir) il est altéré

you study, the less you will improve. The more I
étudier p profiter

examine that question, the more difficult I find it. The
— ner — je la trouve difficile

more we want people to serve us, the less happy
avoir besoin de gens pour nous servir nous

are we.

sommes heureux.

RULE 42.—the more expressed by plus.

☞ If the comparatives of proportion are made with two substantives, or two adjectives, the words of the sentence are put in the following order. 1. *Plus* or *moins*. 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The substantive, adjective or adverb. The rest as in English; example:

The richer people are; the more covetuous they are.

1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4

plus on est riche, plus on est avare.

not le plus riche on est; le plus avare on est:

as if it were: more one is rich, more one is covetuous; and so on for all the sentences of the same kind.

The more elevated in dignity one is, the less pride one

élevé en — té on d'orgueil on

ought to have. *The more difficult a thing is, the more*
devoir A* difficile chose f

honourable. When a man possesses nothing great
elle est honorable ne posséder rien 18

but his birth, *the higher that birth is, the more insigni-*
que naissance grand

ficant it must appear. *The shorter the day is, the longer*
fiante devoir A paroître court jour long

is the night. *The less money he gets, the less expense he*
nuit d'argent gagner de dépense

(is at).

faire (ir)

RULE 43.—The Superlative governs the Subjunctive and Genitive.

☞ The superlative always governs the noun in the genitive case in French, and most commonly the verb in the subjunctive mood; examples:

China is the greatest empire in the world,
la Chine est le plus grand empire du monde—genit.

You are the happiest man I know.
vous êtes l'homme le plus heureux que je connoisse—subj.
not empire dans le monde; nor, que je connois.

Probity is one of the greatest qualities a man
—té 9 une —té qu'
can possess. Of all the amusements and pleasures
pouvoir (ir) posséder tous — les plaisirs
of life, conversation has always been looked upon as
4 vie 9 — toujours considérée * comme
the most reasonable method of unbending the mind. In
raisonnable 31 moyen 44 139 délasser esprit
the rich crown which His Majesty wears in parliament, is
couronne f —té f porter au parlement il y
a large emerald seven inches round, the finest in the
a grand émeraude f 35 ponce de tour
world. The best quality a man can have, is to be
monde m meilleur qu' pouvoir (ir) d'être
civil and obliging toward the most uncivil and disobliging
— obligeant envers incivil 31 désobligeant 44
people. The city of Troy was formerly the most famous
personne f pl ville Troie B autrefois fameux
in Asia Minor. The reign of Lewis the Fourteenth was one
Asie Mineur règne Louis 11 c
of the longest, and altogether one of the most glorious which
tout à la fois glorieux
is recorded in history.
pl rapportés dans 4 histoire.

RULE 44.—The Superlative takes an Article.

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article *le, la, les*, before them; but the substantive takes no article, if the superlative goes first; examples:

The greatest man in the French army.

le plus grand homme de l'armée Française.

You are the most obliging man in the town.

vous êtes l'homme le plus obligeant de la ville.

N. B. The superlatives precede the substantive, when they are formed from the adjectives mentioned in the rule 30; and usually go after, when they are formed from any other..

The most learned men are not often the most virtuous.
savant 31 souvent vertueux
Sobriety renders the most common way of living agree-
sobriété 9 rendre commun 31 genre m vie agré-
able ; it gives the most vigorous health, which is the most
able elle donner vigoureux 31 santé qui
constant of all pleasures. Pride shuts the mind against th-
106 plaisir orgueil fermer esprit à
plainest conviction. The emperor Antoninus is considered as
évident 31 — —reux Antonin considérer
one of the greatest princes who ever reigned. The
un 30 — aient jamais régné
canal of Languedoc is one of the most memorable monuments
— du — un mé— 31 —
which have been made in the age of Lewis the fourteenth.
qui 43 faits dans siècle m Louis 11
The most ancient and general idolatry, was the worship ren-
29 idolâtrie B culte m ren-
dered to the sun.
du soleil

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon ADJECTIVES, COMPARATIVES, and SUPERLATIVES.

The first wing of the noble and superb edifice of Greenwich
30 aile f 29 —be bâtiment —
was erected by Charles the second. The epic poem,
c élevé — 11 épique 31 poëme m
whether it appear in the majestic simplicity of Homer,
soit qu'il paroître F dans —tueux 31 —té Homère
or in the finished elegance of Virgil, presents an endless
finie 31 élé— Virgile présenter sans fin 31
variety of grand and beautiful objects, which it is impossible
variété 29— beau objet qu' —
to contemplate without a perpetual succession of agreeable
de —pler sans perpétuel 31 — agréable 31
emotions. It may be said that a magistrate is a
*émotions on pouvoir (ir) A * dire —trat*
speaking law, and the law a dumb magistrate.
parlant 31 loi muet 31

The great wall (on the) north of China is about
muraille au nord la Chine 36 environ
fifteen hundred miles long, and the royal canal of that em-
quinze 35 —31 —
pire is about eighteen hundred miles long. The walls of
— dix-huit 35 mur
Babylon were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad.
Babylone B 36 pied 35

The fewer desires, the more peace. The more we
 * *moins* 18 *désir* * 18 *paix* 41 *on*
 abstain from sensual pleasures, the easier we (can do
s'abstenir *sensuel* 31 *plaisir* *plus aisément* 42 *pouvoir* A
 without them); and the more we indulge them, the
s'en passer 41 *satisfaire* 48 41
 more (desirous we are) to gratify them. An angry man
on désire * *satisfaire* 48 *en colère* 31
 who suppresses his passion, thinks worse than he speaks;
étouffer — *penser plus mal* 40 *parler*
 an angry man who will chide, speaks worse than he
vouloir (ir) A *gronder* 40
 thinks. One of the greatest defects of the Pharsalia, is that
un *défaut* *Pharsale f* *cette*
 fury of imagination which Lucan did not know how to
fougue f — *que Lucain* *savoir (ir)* B * *
 repress, and which made him rather an enthusiast
réprimer *en faire (ir)* * *plutôt* *enthousiaste m*
 than a poet.
poète

I have no pity on the misery of those who, being young
n' *pas pitié de* *misère f* *ceux* *jeune*
 and strong, chuse rather to beg than to work; but I
fort *aimer mieux* * *mendier* 40 *de travailler mais j'ai*
 pity the old who cannot get their livelihood.
pitié des vieillards *pouvoir (ir)* A *gagner* *vie*
 Westminster Abbey, within its walls, is three hundred
 17 *Abbaye f* *en dedans des mur* 36 *cent*
 and sixty feet long; at the nave it is seventy feet broad,
 * *soixante pied* 35 *à* *nef* 36 *soixante-dix* 35
 and at the cross one hundred and ninety. The front
croix * * *quatre-vingt-dix* *façade*
 of Somerset House towards the Strand is about one hundred
 17 *vers* — m 36 *environ* *
 feet long, and the front towards the principal court is two
 35 *vers* 31 — *cour* 36
 hundred feet and more.

The most learned men make sometimes the grossest
savant 31 *faire (ir)* *quelquefois* *grossier* 44
 mistakes. Obedience is the surest means of pleasing
faute f *obéissance* 44 *moyen sing.* *plaire* 139 A
 our superiors.
supérieur

CHAPTER IV.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—See p. 23.

THIS chapter is divided into three sections. The first
 shews when the personal pronouns are conjunctive or dis-

conjunctive. The second treats of the pronouns used with reference to animals and things. The third explains the right placing of personal pronouns, &c.

SECTION I.

When the Personal Pronouns are Conjunctive or Disjunctive.

RULE 45.—*Personal Pronouns in the Nominative.*

1. The personal pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*, are usually *conjunctive*, and expressed in French by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, when they are the subject or the nominative case of a verb; examples:

<i>I play;</i>	<i>thou singest;</i>	<i>he dances;</i>	<i>we speak.</i>
<i>je joue;</i>	<i>tu chantes;</i>	<i>il danse;</i>	<i>nous parlons.</i>

2. They are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; first, when divided by a conjunction; as, *lui et moi nous irons*, not *il et je*, he and I shall go there. Secondly, when they are used in an answer to a question; as, *qui a fait cela?*—*moi*, not *je*; who has done that?—*I*. Thirdly, when they come after a comparative; as, *il est plus savant qu'eux*, not *qu'ils*, he is more learned than *they*. Fourthly, when they come before the word *qui* or *seul*; as, *c'est moi qui le dis*, not *c'est je*, it is I who say so; *lui seul peut le faire*, not *il seul*, he alone can do it.

1. The eagle has a very piercing eye; *he* looks at the sun without lowering his eye-lids; *he* inhabits the cold countries, *he* builds his nest on the summit of the highest trees. *I* am not so learned as your brother, but *he* is older than *I*.—1. You speak too fast.—2. *He* and your brother were of the same opinion.

2. *They* and my brother are come.—2. *They* alone have fought the enemy; and consequently *they* alone deserve to be rewarded for that brilliant action which ensures our victory.—2. Telemachus, speaking of his father Ulysses to the goddess Calypso, said to her: Penelope his wife, and

who am his son, have lost all hope (of seeing him again.)
nous perdu 106 espérance de le revoir

Sir, some one has written a book against you.—Who?
*monsieur * on écrire livre m contre qui*
 Scopas.—He? I forgive him; what he writes is read (by
lui pardonner ce qu' n'est lu de
 no one); he hurts no one but himself. You like the town,
*personne ne nuire * qu'à lui-même ville f*
 and I the country.
campagne f

RULE 46.—Personal Pronouns in the Genitive.

The personal pronouns, of me, of him, of her, of us, of you, of them, are most frequently disjunctive in the genitive case, and expressed by *de moi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux* or *d'elles*; example:

They often speak of me, but I never speak of them*.
ils parlent souvent de moi, mais je ne parle jamais d'eux.
 When one advised Philip to expel from his
comme on conseiller B à Philippe de chasser
 dominions a man who had spoken ill of him; I will take
état B mal 172 se garder
 care not to do it, replied Philip; he would go (every
n bien de le faire répliquer c aller (ir) E partout
 where), and speak ill of me. In the education of youth,
** dans é— des jeunes gens*
 we ought to instruct them in the religious worship which
*on devoir A * instruire 48 religieux 31 culte m*
 God requires of them. I speak well of you, Damon; you
dieu demander dire (ir) du bien
 speak ill of me. What a misfortune is ours! Neither
*dire du mal quel * malheur le nôtre on ne nous*
 of us is believed. If you do not behave better, I will
croit ni l'un ni l'autre se conduire mieux
 complain of you to your father.
se plaindre

RULE 47.—Personal Pronouns in the Dative

1. The personal pronouns, to me, to thee, to him, to her, to us, to you, to them, are conjunctive, and expressed in French by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, before the verb or its auxiliary; examples:

She speaks to him.

elle lui parle

She has spoken to them.

elle leur a parlé

as if it were, she to him speaks; she to them has spoken.

* They are sometimes expressed by *en*, in answer to a question; as, *parlez vous de moi?*—oui, j'en parlois.

2. They are disjunctive, and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux* or *à elles*, when several nouns or pronouns in the dative case are governed by the same verb; as, *je parle à vous et à lui*, I speak to you and to him;—when they are governed by a reflected verb; as, *il s'adressa à moi*, he applied to me, *je me fiois à lui*, I trusted to him;—when they are governed by any of the following verbs; *aller*, to go; *courir*, to run; *boire*, to drink; *penser*, to think; and *venir*, to come; examples:

I think of you.	Go to him.	He comes to me.
je pense à vous	allez à lui	il vient à moi

N. B. The pronouns *him* and *her* are expressed by *lui*, and *them* by *leur*, when the preposition *to* can be prefixed to them. They are usually expressed by *le, la, or les*, when it cannot.

1. The forgiveness of our enemies does not consist solely in not hurting them in their reputation or fortune; *seulement à nuire à dans ré—* 63 — we must besides love them and do them good.—1. A good heart is as grateful to you (for the) advantages *on devoir A en outre aimer 48 faire à du bien* you wish him, as (for the) presents you make him.—2. I forgive both you and him, because I hope you will behave better (for the future).—2. When your brother came to us, we were not thinking of him. You have deceived me; I will not trust you any more.—2. The minister is your enemy; if you apply to him you never will succeed.—1. A young man who follows the good advice which is given him, will be a man of merit. *—tre si s'adresser A 172 réussir jeune suivre (ir) conseil pl qu'on * donne à mérite*

RULE 48.—Personal Pronouns in the Accusative.

☞ When the personal pronouns, *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, are in the accusative, they are usually conjunctive, and expressed by *me, te, se, le, la, nous, vous, les*, before the verb which governs them, or before its auxiliary; examples:

I see them.	I know you.	He loves us.
je les vois	je vous connois	il nous aime

I have seen *them*. I have known *you*. He has loved *us*.
je les ai vus je vous ai connu il nous a aimés
 as if it were, *I them see, I you know, he us loves, &c.*

Observe, that *le, la, les*, are pronouns before a verb and articles before a noun.

God is a father to those who love *him*, and a protector
Dieu le de ceux aimer le — leur
 to those who fear *him*. Vice often deceives *us* under the
de craindre 4 m 172 tromper sous
 shape of virtue. If you would get a friend,
masque m 4 vouloir (ir) A avoir ami
 you must prove *him* first, and be not hasty to credit *him*.
il faut éprouver auparavant prompt à vous fier à
 A great source of error, is the common practice of
— l' erreur c'est commun 31 pratique f de
 judging what men will appear in a condition (in which)
juger de ce que paroître — où
 we have not seen *them*, from what they appear in another,
vus d'après ce que une autre
 (in which) we see *them*.
où voir (ir)

RULE 49.—Pronouns after a Preposition.

When the personal pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are always disjunctive, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle; nous, vous, eux, or elles*; examples:

Do that for *me*. Do not speak against *them*.
faites cela pour moi ne parlez pas contre eux
 not, *faites cela pour me, ne parlez pas contre les*

May these children be to you, what they have been.
puissent enfant envers ce qu'
 to me! O God! do for *them* what I cannot
envers H ce que pouvoir (ir) A
 myself! repay them thirty years of happiness, which I
moi-même rendez leur trente ans bonheur
 owe to their tenderness and virtue. Pisistratus said
devoir tendresse 63 vertu — te dire (ir) c
 of a drunken man, who had spoken against *him*: I am no
ivre 31 B contre
 more angry with *him*, than if a blind man had run
*fâché contre aveugle * s'étoit jeté*
 against *me*. The love of enemies consists in desiring their
amour ennemi consister à leur désirer
 welfare, in praying for *them*, and in speaking well of
du bien à prier à parler en bien
them, when occasion requires it.
quand 9 demander le 50

PRONOUNS used with reference to ANIMALS and THINGS.

SECTION II.

Of the impersonal Pronouns, it, they, or them.

RULE 50.—*The Pronouns, it, they, them.*

When the pronouns *it* and *they*, which the English use with reference to animals and inanimate objects, are in the nominative case, they are expressed, *it* by *il* or *elle*; and *they* by *ils* or *elles*. When *it* and *them* are in the accusative, they are expressed, *it* by *le* or *la*, and *them* by *les* before the verb, as the personal pronouns, of which before. Thus, speaking of a house, we say,

It is new; I will not sell *it*; but I will let *it*;
elle est neuve; *je ne la vendrai pas*; *mais je la louerai.*

Observe to make these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they have reference.

Ambition is a noble passion, but *it* often occasions
9 — —31 — *mais souvent* 172 — *sionner*
many mischiefs. Neglect the pleasures of life; the pains
bien des mal négliger H plaisir 4 vie peine
which follow *them* prove (how much) *they* are vain.
suivre (ir) prouver combien —
The pleasures of a temperate man are durable, because *they*
tempéré 31 — *parce qu'*
are regular; and his life is calm, because *it* is innocent.
régulier vie calme —
The public approbation is the object which makes us
31 — *objet faire (ir) 48*
undertake heroical actions, and it is by such actions,
entreprendre héroïque 31 7 — c'est de telles —
that we deserve *it*. (This is) a fine apple-tree, *it* blossoms
mériter f voilà pommier fleurir
every spring; yet *it* seldom produces any fruit. I
tous les printemps rarement 172 produire aucun —
will cut *it* down, if *it* yield no apples this year.
*abattre (ir) * donner 18 pomme année*

RULE 51.—*en*, for it or them.

1. The pronouns *it* and *them*, are expressed by *en* before a verb which governs the genitive case ; examples :

Do not speak of it. I remember it very well.
n'en parlez pas *je m'en souviens très-bien*

2. When the words *some*, *any*, come after a verb, and have reference to a noun antecedent, they are also expressed in French by *en* before the verb ; example :

If he has any pears, he will give you some.
s'il a des poires, il vous en donnera

2. You have bought fine lace, give me *some* ; buy *some*,
acheter 8 dentelle H m' 56 H
 if you will have *any*.—1. What avail riches to a
*vouloir (ir) A * que servent 4 richesses*
 miser? he does not make any use of *them*.—2. I have
avoir faire (ir) aucun usage
 many oranges, will you have *any*? I will be obliged
*plusieurs — vouloir (ir) A 55 * obligé*
 to you, if you will give me *some*.—1. Life is a gift of
 47 *vouloir A donner 9 vie don*
 God ; to destroy it is a crime.—I. Honour is an inaccessible
*Dieu * disposer en crime 9 honneur 31*
 island : when you have once gone out of it, you cannot
*île f aussitôt que être * sortir * pouvoir (ir)*
 (come into it again.)
A y rentrer

RULE 52.—*lui*, *leur*, *y*, it, them *.

1. When the pronouns *it* and *them* are in the dative case, and have reference to animals, they are expressed by *lui* and *leur*, as the personal pronouns ; example :

Your dog is dry ; give it something to drink.
Votre chien a soif ; donnez-lui à boire

2. They are both expressed by *y*, when they refer to inanimate objects ; examples :

This picture is very good ; put a frame to it.
Ce tableau est très-bon ; mettez-y une bordure.

1. Your horses are hungry, give *them* some hay.
cheval avoir faim donner H à 7 foin

* When to it or to them are preceded by the verbs to owe or to be indebted, they are always expressed by *lui* or *leur*, even with reference to an inanimate object.

2. Before you tell a story, it is proper to give the
*avant de * conter histoire à propos de donner à*
 company a true idea of the persons who are con-
compagnie vrai idée personne f intè-
 cerned in it. When truth appears in all its brightness,
ressé 4 vérité paroître éclat
 nobody can resist it. My house is in good air; I
116 pouvoir (ir) A résister maison en —
 am indebted to it (for the) recovery of my health.—2. Pearls
redevable du rétablissement santé 9 perle f
 would not (be worth) (so much) money, if luxury did
valoir (ir) E tant 18 argent luxe m.
 not give value to them.—2. (How many) people would
donner B 7 prix combien 18 gens
 not be known in society, if gaming did not introduce them
connu 4 jeu —duire B 50
 into it.

RULE 53.—*Pronouns it and them left out.*

When the impersonal pronouns *it* and *them* come after a preposition, and have reference to inanimate objects, they are usually left out, and the preposition becomes an adverb; examples:

Come near the fire: I am quite near it:
Approchez-vous du feu: je suis tout auprès:
 not *je suis tout auprès de lui.*

The falling of the water of the Nile makes (so much)
chute f eau Nil faire (ir) tant 18
 noise that it deafens those who dwell near it. Labour
bruit elle rendre sourd ceux demeurer auprès travail 9
 is fruitless when nature is against it. Do you know where
*inutile 4 — contre * savoir (ir) où est*
 the treasury of London is?—Yes, Sir, I do; well then,
*trésorerie —dres * oui le sais eh-bien*
 you will easily find your way; near it is York-house,
aisément 172 trouver chemin auprès 17
 just by is the horse-guards, and (over against) it, is the
tout auprès garde à cheval f vis-à-vis
 royal chapel, where you want to go.
*31 chapelle où vouloir (ir) * aller*

RULE 54.—*Supplying Pronouns, le, la, les.*

One of these three supplying pronouns, *le, la, les*, is usually put in French before the verb *être* used in answer to a question; they are also used every time the words *it* and *so* are or could be expressed in English.

1. *Le*, indeclinable, is always used with reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers; examples.

We have been sick, and are so still.

Nous avons été malades, et nous le sommes encore

Are you satisfied, madam? no, I am not.

êtes-vous contente, madame? non, je ne le suis pas.

2. When the supplying pronouns have reference to a substantive, they agree with it in gender and number; thus we use *le* with reference to a noun masculine, *la* to a noun feminine, and *les* to a noun plural. Examples:

Are you Peter's son? yes, Sir, I am.

êtes-vous le fils de Pierre? Oui monsieur, je le suis m.

Are you the daughter of Mr. A?—yes, I am.

êtes-vous la fille de Monsieur A? Oui, je la suis f.

Are these your horses? yes, they are.

*sont-ce là vos chevaux? oui, ce les sont *, pl.*

1. I thought that Miss B. was married, but she is
croire (ir) B mademoiselle B marié
not.—My aunts are sick, and I think they will be so for a long
*tante malade penser 83 * **

time.—2. Are you the sisters of Mr. Taylor? Yes, we are.
temps sœur

1. Are they learned? No, they are not.—2. Are you the
savant? non

brothers of admiral Nelson? Yes, we are. Are you
l'amiral

the sister of colonel Jenkinson? No, sir, I am not.
du —

—1. Are your brothers learned? Yes, they are. Are
92 savant 92

your sisters married? No, they are not.—Is your mother
marié? non 92

sick? No, she is not.—Is your father rich? No, he is
malade 92 riche

not.—2. Is that your house? Yes, it is. Are these your
est-ce là sont-ce là

gardens? No, they are not. Is that your hat? Yes, it is.
jardin est-ce là chapeau

Are these your pens? Yes, they are.—1. Your sisters are
sont-ce là plume f sœur

happy, and we are not so. 1. They have been rich, but are
heureux elles riche 59

not so at present.
à présent

* *Ce* is used in the answer, before *le*, *la*, *les*, when the question is asked, by *est-ce là* or *sont-ce là*; example: *est-ce là votre livre? oui ce l'est*: we also answer by *oui* or *non*, without repeating the verb by which the question is asked.

SECTION III.

*The right placing of Personal Pronouns.*RULE 55.—*Place of the Pronouns je, tu, il, &c.*

The personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, &c.* are placed after the verb, when the sentence is interrogative, and before when it is not; examples:

I speak; do you speak? it rains; does it rain?
je parle; parlez-vous? il pleut; pleut-il?

We often (pass judgment) upon men's actions, according
 172 *juger* des 17 — selon
 to our love or hatred of the persons who have done
 * 63 *haine* f pour personne faites
 them. Do you learn French? have you learnt it
 48 *apprendre (ir)* 57
 long? do you speak it fluently? Things do not
long-temps *couramment* 9 chose f
 always strike us in proportion as they are obvious; (on the)
 172 *frapper* 48 à — qu' *claire* au
 contrary, some do not strike us at all, because they
contraire quelques-unes 48 *du tout* parce qu'
 are obvious (in the) highest degree. Is he young? are they
au *haut* degré *jeune*
 rich? is she handsome?
riche *beau*

RULE 56.—*Pronouns after the Verb.*

1. The personal pronouns are put in French as in English, immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the second person singular, or in the first or second person plural of the imperative affirmative, and then instead of *me, te, we* make use of *moi, toi*, for the dative and accusative; examples:

give it me; sell it him; send them some.
donnez-le-moi; vendez-le-lui; envoyez-leur-en.

2. If, however, there were several imperatives affirmative, the governed pronouns should go, in French, after the first verbs and before the last, if this be joined to the others by a conjunction; examples:

Sell it me, or give it me; take it and eat it.
vendez-le-moi, ou me le donnez; prenez-la et la mangez.

3. If the verb were in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns should go before it, as they go in all other tenses; examples :

Do not sell it him; do not give it them.
ne le lui vendez pas; ne le leur donnez pas.

i. Answer me; write to him; forgive them; speak to
répondre écrire pardonner à parler
 us.—2. Love your enemies, and do them good, when
aimer ennemi faire à bien 7
 you can. 2. Obey your parents, love and respect
le pouvoir (ir) A obéir à respecter
 them (as long as) you live.—1. Consider, o parents, the
tant que vivre D considérer
 importance of your obligations towards your children; it
 — — *envers enfant*
 depends on you, (whether or not they will be) useful
dépendre de qu'ils soient ou non utile 31
 members of society; teach them obedience, and they shall
7 —bre 4 société enseigner à obéissance 9
 bless you; teach them modesty, and they shall be reserved;
bénir 48 inspirer à 9 —tie réservé
 teach them charity, and they shall be loved; teach them
inspirer à —té porter
 temperance, and they shall enjoy good health. 3. Do
à 4 — jouir d'une santé
 not forgive him, but punish him directly.
pardonner à punir sur-le-champ

RULE 57.—Pronouns before the Verb.

✠ The personal pronouns are always put in French before the verb they are governed by, or before its auxiliary, when it is not in the imperative affirmative; examples :

I know him. I have seen them. I have spoken to her.
je le connois. je les ai vus. je lui ai parlé

The second Brutus would have re-established the Romans
 — — *E rétablir Romain*
 in their ancient liberty, if he had found them as well dis-
ancien —té B trouver aussi
 posed as they were in the time of the first.
—sé qu'ils 54 B temps

Jupiter, vexed that Saturn laid snares for him, armed
*irrité 14 tendre G 7 piéçé * lui c*
 against him, drove him out of his kingdom, and con-
*contre 49 chasser c * royaume m ob-*

strained *him* to quit heaven. Prosperity gets *us*
liger c *de quitter* 9 *ciel* 9 — *té faire (ir)*
 friends, and adversity tries *them*. Do you know the
ami 7 9 — *té éprouver* *connoître*
 Prince of Wales? I have seen *him* several times, but I
 — *Galles* *voir (ir)* *plusieurs fois mais*
 have never spoken *to him*. We flatter ourselves in vain
 120 *se flatter* * *en* —
 that we quit our passions, when it is they which quit
quitter — *ce sont elles*
us. I believe *him*. Do you believe *them*? He will not
croire (ir)
 punish *me*. Do you not know *her*?
punir *connoître*

RULE 58.—Order of the Pronouns before the Verb.

☞ When a verb which is not in the imperative affirmative, governs two or more pronouns, they are always placed immediately before it, or before its auxiliary, in the following order ;

Me, te, se, nous, vous,	<i>go before every other.</i>
le, la, les, - - - -	<i>go before lui, leur, y, or en.</i>
lui, leur, - - - -	<i>go before y or en.</i>
y, - - - -	<i>goes before en.</i>

N. B. When two pronouns are governed by a verb, that which has reference to persons is put in the dative in French, if the preposition *to* could be prefixed to it in English ; examples :

He gives *it me* ; he gives *it him* ; he gives *it to them*.
il me le donne ; il le lui donne ; il le leur donne.
 He has sold *it to him* ; he has given *me some* this morning.
il le lui a vendu ; il m'en a donné ce matin
 as if it were *he to me it gives ; he it to him has sold*

I dare not tell *it them*. Pray, brother, tell *it to my*
oser 123 dire (ir) *je vous prie* 64 56
 mother ; she knows *it*, I told *it to her* yesterday. If you
savoir (ir) 57 *c* *hier*
 still have your orange, give *it me*. I am sorry
encore 172 — *f* 56 *fâché*
 I cannot give *it you* ; but your sister has been *a good*
de ne pouvoir *
 girl, and I have given *it her* ; I will give *you some* to-morrow,
fille *f* 51 *demain*
 if your exercise be well done.
théne A

Do not say to a friend who asks something of
dire (ir) *demander quelque chose m*
 you. Go, and come again to-morrow, I will give it you,
aller (ir) *revenir* * *demain*
 when you can give it him (at the time). The duke of
pouvoir (ir) *sur-le-champ* *duc*
 Bouillon was obliged to give the town of Sedan to
c *obliger de* *ville* —
 Henry the Fourth; but this prince, satisfied with his sub-
Henri *II* — *content de* *sou*
 mission, gave it him back soon. He gives it to me; he has
 — *rendre c* * *bientôt*
 lent it you; he has sent them to us. He gives it them; he
prêter *envoyés*
 will lend it to them; he has sent them to him. You have
prêter *envoyés*
 told it me; I pray you, (never to speak to me any more
dire (ir) *prier* *de ne m'en plus parler*
 about it). Epaminondas refused the presents of Darius,
 — — — — — *ser c* — — — — —
 and told those who offered them to him from that
dire à ceux *offrir B* *de la part de*
 king: If he desires nothing of me but (what is) just, (there
roi *demande* *118* * *me que* *de* *juste* *il*
 is no occasion) for presents; and if he has other de-
ne faut pas *de* — *si* *d'autres des-*
 signs, let him know that he is not rich enough to
seins *savoir (ir)* *H* *assez riche pour*
 bribe me.
ompre 57

When Personal Pronouns are or are not to be repeated.

RULE 59.—*Pronouns je, tu, il, &c. repeated.*

1. The pronouns of the first and second persons, such as, *e, tu, nous, vous*, are usually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case; ex-ample:

I say, and will always say, that she was in the wrong.
je dis et je dirai toujours qu'elle avoit tort.

2. The pronouns of the third person, such as *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, need not to be repeated, unless the verb be in different tenses, or separated from the preceding by many words, or one be affirmative and the other negative; ex-amples:

Cæsar conquered provinces, and subdued whole nations.
César conquît des provinces et soumit des nations entières.

They have seen him, but they have not spoken to him.
ils l'ont vu, mais ils ne lui ont pas parlé.

I maintain, and will always maintain, that we cannot be
soutenir 172 pouvoir A
happy without practising virtue. Man rises and un-
sans 139 pratiquer 9 s'élever dé-
folds his faculties by degrees; he advances slowly to
ployer —té degré avancer lentement 4
maturity, and afterwards declines gradually, till
—te ensuite décliner graduellement jusqu'à ce qu
he sinks into the grave. Beware of drunkenness; it
descendre F tombeau éviter H * 9 ivrognerie
impairs the understanding, tarnishes reputation, and con-
abrutir entendement ternir —
sumes the body. He says so, but he does not believe
—mer corps dire (ir) le croire (ir)
it. We have spoken, and will speak again in your favour.
parler encore en faveur

RULE 60.—Pronouns me, te, se, &c. repeated.

✱ The personal pronouns must be repeated in French be-
fore every verb they are governed by, though they are not re-
peated in English; examples:

I honour and respect him. I say and repeat it.
je l'honore et je le respecte, je le dis et je le répète.
as if it were, I him honour and him respect.

The most beautiful flowers last but a short time,
beau fleur ne durer que * peu 18 temps
the least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the
moindre pluie ternir vent flétrir
sun scorches them; not to mention an infinite num-
soleil brûler pour ne pas parler d'un infini 31 nom-
ber of insects, that spoil and hurt them. A
bre 18 —te gâter les faire du mal leur
passionate temper renders a man unfit for business, de-
31 —né caractère rendre inepte 4 affaire pl pri-
vives him of his reason, robs him of all that is great
ver raison ôter lui * tout ce qu'il y a de
in his nature, and makes him unfit for society. The Holy
— fait qu'il n'est plus propre société 4
Scriptures teach us what we ought to be; let us
écriture apprendre (ir) ce que devoir A * * *
therefore read them, meditate upon them, and make
c'est pourquoi lire (ir) H méditer * faire (ir)
them the rule of our conduct. A well-educated son never
en règle f conduite bien élevé 31 120

rebels against his father; he loves, honours, and
se révolter contre *aimer, honorer,*
 respects him.
 —ter

RULE 61.—*Pronouns, himself, herself, &c.*

1. The pronouns, *himself, herself, themselves*, are expressed, in French, by *se*, with a reflected verb; and, most frequently, by *lui-même*, or *elle-même*, &c. in other cases; examples:

He is too proud; he does not know *himself*.
il est trop fier; il ne se connaît pas.

He blames in others the faults he commits *himself*.
il blâme dans les autres les fautes qu'il fait lui-même.

2. *Soi* is used for *one's self*, or *himself*, in speaking of persons in general; that is to say, in a vague sense, and without any specification; example:

One ought not to speak of *one's self*, unless with modesty.
on ne doit parler de soi qu'avec modestie.

2. (Every body) acts for *himself*.—2. When a man does
chacun agir *quand * on*
 not mind any body but *himself*, he does not deserve to live.
*penser * * qu'à on mériter de vivre*

1. It is not the part of a courageous man to expose
*il n'est pas * * —geux 31 de —ser*
himself to danger without necessity.—1. They are easily

— *sans nécessité on pardonne aisément*
 pardoned who endeavour to withdraw *themselves* from their
à ceux chercher à retirer

errors.—2. When a man loves nobody but *himself*, he is
*erreur quand * on n'aime * que on*

not fit for society.—2. To excuse in *one's self* the faults
*propre 4 * —ser en faute*

which one cannot bear in others, is to like
*on ne pouvoir (ir) à souffrir dans les autres c'est * aimer*

better to be foolish *one's self* than to see others so.—1.
*mieux * fou soi-même 40 de voir tels*

Your brother knows *himself*; he often makes reflections
connoître souvent 172 faire 7

upon *himself*, and I hope he will soon correct *himself*
sur espérer bientôt 172 corriger

of his bad habits.
mauvais habitude

RULE 62.—*itself* expressed by *lui* or *soi*.

The pronoun *itself* is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*, with reference to an animate object, or even inanimate, taken in an individual sense; but it is usually expressed by *soi* with reference to a pronoun, or to an inanimate object taken in a general sense; examples:

That is good in *itself*. Vice is odious of *itself*.
cela est bon en soi. le vice est odieux de soi.

The remedy which you propose is harmless of *itself*.
remède m proposer innocent en
 Men often reject truth, though evident in *itself*,
souvent 172 rejeter vérité quoique
 because the sight (of it) displeases them. Self-love
parce que vue en 58 déplaire leur 58 amour-propre
 directs (every thing) to *itself*. Virtue is amiable of *itself*.
diriger tout aimable en
 Whatever is good in *itself*, is not always approved. The
tout ce qui bon toujours approuver
 palm-tree incessantly rises of *itself*, whatever efforts
palmier sans cesse 173 se relever quelques effort
 are made to depress it.
qu'on fasse pour couber 48

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

To forget one's birth by doing bad actions, or
** oublier sa naissance 142 8 mauvais —*
 to remember it only (out of) vanity, is to dishonour
*se ressouvenir en 58 seulement par c'est * déshonorer*
 it equally. God requires your heart; you cannot
la 48 également demander cœur ne pouvoir (ir) A
 refuse it him. A flatterer has not a good opinion of himself
*—ser 58 flatteur * — 61*
 nor of others. A gross mistake is not only that
ni des autres grossier 31 faute f seulement celle
 which every reader perceives, but it is moreover, that
79 tout lecteur apercevoir c'est encore celle
 which we find gross, after another has made us per-
79 trouver après qu'un autre faire 58 aper-
 ceive it. If you have promised any thing to an
cevoir 58 promettre (ir) quelque chose

enemy, you ought not to break the promise you have
*ennemi devoir A * manquer à promesse 83*
 made him.
faite 47

We confess small failings, only to persuade others
n'avouer 8 petit défaut que pour —der aux autres
 that we have no great ones. There is no age
*nous n'en avons 18 * il n'y a point 18 siècle*
 or condition but can reap great benefits
ni 21 — qui ne pouvoir (ir) & recueillir 8 avantage
 from history; when properly taught, it proves a
histoire elle est bien enseignée elle devenir
 school of morality for all men; cries down vices,
*école f morale 'pour tous les 59 décrier * 9*
 unmasks false virtues, dispels vulgar errors, and
démasquer fausses 31 dissiper vulgaire 31 erreur
 demonstrates, by a thousand instances, that there is nothing
*prouver * exemple qu'il n'y a rien de*
 great but honour and probity. You will find it impos-
*que honneur 4 —té trouver * —*
 sible, said Mentor to the king of Salentum, to bring
dire (ir) c Salente de ramener
 men back to the principles of virtue, after you have
*9 * —pe la après que u*
 taught them to despise it.
appris leur 47 à mépriser 48

You have promised me a watch; when will you give
promis 57 montre f quand donner
 it me? If we did not flatter ourselves, flattery would not
58 se flatter B nous mêmes —rie
 (be hurtful) to us. The law of nature forbids us to hurt
nuire E 47 loi — défendre de nuire à
 (any body). I have bought some new pamphlets; I
personne acheter 8 nouveau —
 will send them to you, if you will return
envoyer (ir) 58 vouloir (ir) A rendre
 them to me next week. You have many
58 la prochaine 31 semaine beaucoup 18
 oranges; pray give me some. The merit of our
— je vous prie de 51 mérite m
 actions comes from the motives which produce them, and
— venir motif —duire 48
 from their conformity to the laws of God.
—té loi

Posterity renders to men of merit, the justice which
9 —térité rendre 2 mérite — 79
 their contemporaries often refuse them. Lend me your
—rain 172 —ser leur 47 prêter 56

grammar; I will return it to you to-morrow; if you
 —maire f rendre 58 demain
 refuse it me, I cannot do my exercise, nor learn
 —ser 58 ne pouvoir (ir) A thème apprendre
 my lesson; because I have lost mine. I tell you the
 leçon parce que perdre la mienne 57
 truth, and you will not believe me. Do you know
 vouloir (ir) A croire 57 connaître
 the Princess of Wales? I have seen her, and had the ho-
 —cesse Galles vue 57 j'ai eu
 nour to speak to her several times. You said you
 de 47 plusieurs fois dire (ir) B que
 would give me a watch when I could
 donner E me 57 montre f pouvoir (ir) E
 write French; my exercise is without fault; when will you
 écrire en sans faute quand
 give it me? Have patience; you shall have it soon.
 58 H — bientôt

CHAPTER V.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 25.

RULE 63.—*Possessive Pronouns are repeated.*

1. The possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes, &c.* are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number; example:

My father, mother, and sisters are in the country.
mon père, ma mère et mes sœurs sont à la campagne
not, mon père, mère, et sœurs sont à la campagne.

2. We use the pronouns masculine *mon, ton, son,* before a noun feminine, when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute thus we say, *mon âme, f son honnêteté, f. not ma âme, sa honnêteté,* which would have a bad sound.

3. The English make the pronouns *his* or *her* agree with the noun antecedent; the French, on the contrary, make *son, sa, ses,* agree with the noun following: thus we say, speaking of a woman,

Her son is learned; her brother is young.
son fils est savant; son frère est jeune

and of a man,

His mother is old; his sister is married.
sa mère est âgée; sa sœur est mariée

1. Such are men; their ingratitude is often the price of
leurs 4 — prix

our favours. 2. A good king does not (so much) consult
bienfait *tant* 172 *—ter*
 his own dignity and elevation, as the advantage and
propre *—té* *élé—* 37 *avantage*
 happiness of his subjects. 1. The laborious man shuts
bonheur *sujet* *laborieux* 31 *bannir*
 out idleness from his house; he considers it as his
 * 9 *paresse* *maison* *—dérer* 57
 greatest enemy; he (rises up) early, he exercises his
ennemie *f* *se lever* *de bon matin* *—cer*
 mind with contemplation, and his body with labour:
esprit *dans* 4 *—* *corps* *en* *travaillant*
 the slothful man, (on the) contrary, is a burden to him-
paresseux * *au* *contraire* *à charge* 61
 self; his body is diseased for want of exercise, his mind is
corps *malade* * *faute* *—ce* *esprit*
 in darkness, his thoughts are confused, his house is in
dans 4 *ténèbres* *pl* *pensée* *—se* *maison* *en*
 disorder, he deplores his fate, but he has no resolution
désordre *m* *déplorer* *sort* *mais* *le courage*
 to remedy it. —3. His mother is dead; her father is
d’y apporter remède *mère* *mort* *père*
 dead; his wife is handsome, her husband is young.—2.
femme *beau* *mari* *jeune*
 His ambition is great; her soul is elevated; my history is
— *âme* *f* *élevé* *histoire*
 short.—His shame is great.—2. Her hope is ill-grounded.
court *honte* *f* *espérance* *mal fondé*

RULE 64.—*Possessive Pronouns used in French and not in English.*

✪ When we speak to our relations or friends, we use the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes*, before the words *père, mère, frère, sœur*, &c. example:

Where are you, daughter? here I am, mother.

Où êtes-vous, ma fille? me voici, ma mère

These pronouns are left out in English.

(At last) the girl being come near the house, mother,
enfin *filles* *venue près de* *mère*
 mother, cried she (come out), mother, come out, (here is)
s’écrier *c* *sortir* *H* *voici*
 a gentleman who has brought us a letter from my father:
monsieur *apporter* 57 *lettre* *père*
 at that summons (out came the mother;) (what is the
appel *la mère* *sortit* *qu’avez-*
 matter), child? said she, seeing her daughter with a
vous *enfant* *c* *en voir* (*ir*) *filles*
 messenger, &c. Lend me your knife, brother. I can-
messenger *prêter* *H* 56 *couteau* *ne sa-*

not, sister, I want it. Where are you, daughter?
voir (ir) E j'en ai besoin où fille
 (Here I am), father. Come, friends, let us fly to glory.
me voici allons voler H 4 gloire.

RULE 65.—*Monsieur, &c. before votre or vos.*

We prefix in French the qualifications of *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, &c.* to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos*, when we speak to any body of their relations or friends, unless they are our inferiors or intimate friends. These qualifications are not used in English; examples:

How does your mother do?
comment se porte Madame votre mère?
 Is your cousin in town?
Monsieur votre cousin est-il en ville?

I have invited your sisters and your cousin to dine with
—ter cousine f à diner
 us, I hope they will come. Is your father at home?
espérer 83 venir 92 la maison
 How does your wife do? Do your sisters learn
*se porter épouse * 92 apprendre (ir)*
 geography? Is your brother in France? Is your aunt
—phie 92 180 tante
 well? Is not your mother returned from the country?
bien 92 revenue campagne f
 I saw yesterday your father and mother, but I did not see
voir (ir) c hier c
 your sister; is she sick?
malade?

RULE 66.—*Possessive Pronouns by the Personal.*

When the possessive pronouns are joined to a verb which denotes an action over any part of the body, they are rendered in French by the personal pronouns, thus; *my* is expressed by *me*; *his* or *her* by *se* or *lui*; *our* by *nous*; *your* by *vous*; and *their* by *se* or *leur*, before the verb; the definite article (*le, la, les*) is put in the same place, in which the possessive pronouns are in English; examples:

He has cut his hand; you have cut his hand.
Il s'est coupé la main; vous lui avez coupé la main.
 as if it were, he to himself has cut the hand; you to him have cut the hand; and so on for others.

Observe to express *his* and *their* by *se* when the verb is reflected; and by *lui* or *leur*, when it is not.

My brother died last year in Germany; it was I
mourir (ir) c l'an passé en Allemagne c 45

who closed *his* eyes. I will pare *your* nails, if you
fermer c yeux rogner ongles
 will cut *my* hair. My brother broke *his* leg
vouloir A couper cheveux pl casser c jambe f
 yesterday morning. Our carriage ran unfortunately
matin voiture passer c malheureusement
 over *his* body, broke *his* leg, and bruised *his* left
sur corps c meurtrir c gauche 31
 shoulder. Do not speak so loud, you split *my* head. If you
épaule f H si haut fendre tête f
 do not take care, you will cut *your* fingers. A
prendre (ir) A garde couper doigt
 cannon ball (shot off) *my* arm. Do not tread upon
boulet de canon emporter c bras marcher H sur
my foot. Wash *your* hands. Warm *your* feet.
pie d laver H main chauffer H

RULE 67.—*Possessive Pronouns left out.*

1. When the verb does not express an action, as before, the possessive pronouns, *my, his, her, &c.* which come before the words *hand, leg, head,* or any other part of the body, are usually left out in French, and the definitive article (*le, la, les,*) is used instead of them; example:

I have a pain in *my* leg, in *my* hand, in *my* eyes.
j'ai mal à la jambe, à la main, aux yeux.

2. If, however, there were an equivocation to be feared, that is to say, if the sentence did not sufficiently explain whose *leg, feet,* or *arm,* &c. we are speaking of, the possessive pronouns should be used in French as in English; example:

I see that *my* leg swells.

je vois que ma jambe enfle,

1. In the last battle our general lost *his* leg, *my*
dernière bataille f perdre c

brother was wounded in *his* shoulder, and I, who stood
c blesser à épaule 45 être B

by him, had *my* thigh (taken off.)—He (tells a false-
auprès de lui j' c cuisse f emportée mentir

hood) as often as he opens *his* mouth.—2. I see that *my*
toutes les fois que ouvrir bouche f voir (ir)

arms swell.—2. Do you think *my* foot will ever (be cured)?
*bras enfler croire 83 pied * 172 guérir F*

—1. It (would be better) for a man of probity to lose *his*
*valoir (ir) E mieux —té * perdre*

life than *his* honour by a criminal action.—1. Cæsar had a
vie honneur criminel 31 — César B la-

bald head, but he covered this defect with a crown of
chauve 3-tête f cacher E défaut couronne

laurels.
laurier sing.

RULE 68.—*Its* expressed by *son* or *en*.

When the possessive pronouns *its* and *their* relate to inanimate things, they are expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*. 1. When they relate to the nominative of the preceding verb; 2. When they are in the genitive or dative, or are preceded by any preposition whatever; 3. When being in the nominative, they are joined to a substantive qualified by an adjective, or specified by some other words; 4. When being in the nominative, the next verb is, or may be followed by the preposition *de*; example:

1. London has *its* beauties.

Londres a ses beautés.

2. I admire the size of *its* streets.

j'admire la grandeur de ses rues.

3. *Its* regular buildings please at the first sight.

ses bâtimens réguliers plaisent au premier coup d'œil.

4. *Its* ships bring the riches of all countries.

ses vaisseaux apportent les richesses de tous les pays.

Its trade produces immense resources.

son commerce produit d'immenses ressources.

5. In any other occasion, *its* or *their* are expressed by *en* before the verb, and the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, before the substantive. So we should say, still speaking of London:

Its situation is very convenient.

la situation en est très-commode.

Its squares appear to me beautiful.

les places m'en paroissent superbes.

I particularly admire *its* rich warehouses.

j'en admire surtout les riches magasins.

5. This illness is dangerous, I know *its* origin and effects.

maladie —reux connoître origine effet

- 2. Jealousy has love for *its* father, and fear for *its*

jalousie amour crainte f

- mother.—5. (This is) a fine tree, *its* fruit is delicious.—

voici arbre m — pl délicieux

1. Nobles, remember that an illustrious birth receives

— se ressouvenir H —tre 31 naissance

- from virtue *its* most shining lustre.—2. Flattery has great

beau lustre m —rie une

- sweetness in *its* voice; it is difficult not to listen to it.

douceur voix —cile de n'y pas prêter l'oreille

- 5. This water is not good for you, I know all *its* qualities,

eau connoître —té

- and I would never recommend it in such cases.—1. Every

120 recommander en pareil cas chaque

- science has *its* principles.

— —pe

5. Paris is a fine city; but *its* streets are too narrow, and
ville mais rue f trop étroit
its houses too high.—1. War has *its* theory like other
maison haut Guerre théorie comme
 sciences.—5. To paint the passions with accuracy, it is
 — *pour peindre passion vérité*
 necessary to have studied the heart of man, and to know
nécessaire 135 étudier cœur connoître
 all *its* springs.
ressort

RULE 69.—*mine*, expressed by *le mien*, &c.

The pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. always take in French the definitive article *le*, *la*, *les* before them, and agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference; example:

Your garden is larger than *mine*, but my house is
votre jardin est plus grand que le mien, mais ma maison est
 larger than *yours*.
plus grande que la vôtre.

Your book is better than *mine*, but my gloves
valoir (ir) mieux mais gant
 are better than *yours*. His action is blameable, *yours* (on the)
 — *blâmable au*
 contrary, is praiseworthy. I have learnt my lesson,
contraire digne de louange apprendre (ir) leçon
 but my sister has not learnt *hers*. Your country is larger
pays grand
 than *ours*, however our king is more powerful than *yours*.
cependant roi puissant
 Is that your book? Yes, it is *mine*. Is that your house?
est-ce là ce est-ce là
 No, it is not *ours*.
ce

RULE 70.—*mine*, expressed by *mes*, &c.

✍ When the disjunctive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. preceded by the preposition *of*, are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, &c. before the substantive, which is put in the plural; examples:

A friend of *mine*; a book of *yours*, &c.
un de mes amis; un de vos livres

as if it were, one of my friends, one of your books; and so on for all other sentences of the same kind.

I have found a book of *yours* among *mine*. A book of *mine*,
trouver parmi 69
 you say, shew it me; no, it is not *mine*, I am sure,
dites-vous montrer H 56 71 en sûr

because I have sold it. Do you know that gentleman?
parce que vendre connaître monsieur
 yes, madam, he is a relation of mine. A friend of ours
madame ce parent ami
 came yesterday to see us, who spoke to us about you.
*venir c hier * voir parler 57 de*
 (This is) a trick of yours. I think that it is yet some
voilà tour croire (ir) c'est encore quelque une
 contrivance of his own. I have been witness to several ma-
*invention * témoin de plusieurs*
 chinations of yours. If you see any friend of mine, do
voir (ir) quelque un
 not forget to mention my return.
oublier H de parler de retour

RULE 71.—*mine*, expressed by *à moi*.

☞ When the possessive pronouns come after the verb *to be* signifying *to belong*, they are expressed

<i>mine</i> by <i>à moi</i>	<i>ours</i> by <i>à nous</i>
<i>thine</i> by <i>à toi</i>	<i>yours</i> by <i>à vous</i>
<i>his</i> by <i>à lui</i>	<i>theirs</i> by <i>à eux m</i>
<i>hers</i> by <i>à elle</i>	<i>theirs</i> by <i>à elles f</i> : examples:

This book is *mine*; that house is *ours*.
ce livre est à moi; cette maison est à nous.

When the verb *to be* signifies *to belong*, the substantive which comes after it is put in the genitive case in English, and in the dative in French: example:

This horse is *my father's*, and that, *my brother's*.
ce cheval-ci est à mon père et celui-là à mon frère.

Is that your house? No, it is not *mine*, I have sold it. I
est-ce là maison vendue
 thought it was *yours*.—Whose horse is this?—*Mine*
croire (ir) B à qui est ce cheval-ci
 And that?—*My father's*. Whose gardens are these?—*Mine*.
celui-là à qui sont ces jardins

(Take up) that watch and carry it to your brother, I
Prendre (ir) H montre f porter 56
 think it is *his*. No, certainly, it is not *his*, he has
croire (ir) qu' certainement
 no watch. Whose is it then? I do not know, unless
 18 *à qui donc savoir (ir) à moins qu'il*
 it be my *aunt's*, who was here yesterday evening.
ne f tante B ici hier au soir

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

As a lame person would in vain praise the
de même qu'un boiteux * *en vain* 172 *louer*
 beauty of his legs, since he cannot (make use) of them)
jambes *puisque* *pouvoir* (ir) *se servir* *en* 58
 without shewing that they are bad; so a fool would in
sans 139 *montrer* *mauvais, ainsi* *sot*
 vain boast of his learning, since he cannot speak without
se vanter *science* *puisque* *parler* *sans* 139
 shewing his extravagance.

63 —

The depravity of human nature is so great, that we
dépravation *humain* 31—f *si*
 oftener please with our failings, than with our good
souvent 172 *par* *défaut* *par*
 qualities. It is a great comfort to have a friend to
—té *c'est* *consolation* *d'* *ami*
 whom you may communicate your thoughts, and who
 81 *pouvoir* (ir) F *—quer* *pensée*
 participates in your pleasures and pains.
partager F * 63 *plaisir* *peine*

Cæsar, determined to pass over into Britain,
étant déterminé *passer* * *en* *Bretagne*
 dispatched Voisenius, a lieutenant of his, to cruise on the
envoyer c — 70 * *croiser* *sur*
 coast of that island.
côte f *île* f

If you will lend me your horse to-day, I will
vouloir (ir) *prêter* 47 *aujourd'hui*
 lend you mine, when you want it. England
prêter 69 *aurez besoin en* 57 *Angleterre* 5
 was (at first) called Albion, signifying rich and happy,
 c *d'abord* *appeler* — *qui signifie* *heureux*
 in regard to its fertility, temperature, and riches.
par rapport 68 *—té* 63 — *richesse*

Sir, here is one of your books among mine. A book of
voici *livre* *parmi* 69 *livre*
 mine, you say, let me see it; no, it is not mine, it is
 70 *dites-vous* *montrez-le-moi* *non* 71
 my brother's. You hurt my arm. The dog has bit
frère 71 *blessé* 66 *bras* *chien* *mordre*
 my leg. You will cut your finger Every language
 66 *jambes* *couper* 66 *doigt* *chaque* *langue*
 has its peculiar phrases and beauties. Hercules made
 68 *particulier* 31 —f —*le* — *faire* (ir) c

a present to Philoctetes, his companion and friend, of his
 * — — 63 —gnon
 arrows, dyed in the blood of the Hydra. Men often reap
flèche f teindre sang Hydre 172 tirer
 more fruit from their errors, than from their most glorious
 18 — — erreur 44 glorieux 31
 actions.

CHAPTER VI.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 26.

RULE 72.—*ce, cette, ces.*

✚ The demonstrative pronouns *this* or *that*, are expressed by *ce* or *cet* before a noun masculine, and by *cette* before a noun feminine; *these* and *those* are both expressed by *ces*, before a noun plural of both genders; examples:

This carpet; that tree; that house; these books, &c.
ce tapis; cet arbre; cette maison; ces livres; &c.

N. B. *Ce* is used before a noun masculine when it begins with a consonant, and *cet* when it begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

2. The demonstrative pronouns are repeated in French before every substantive, though they are not in English; example:

I speak to *that* man and woman.
Je parle à cet homme et à cette femme.

This picture is fine. *That* man is learned. *These* oranges
tableau savant — f
 are not ripe. *This* cake is for you; *that* bird is mine; *these*
mûr gâteau oiseau 71

houses are new. If you do not alter your conduct, and
*neuf changer de * conduite et si*

(make amends for) your former injustice, *this* widow
 59 ne réparer premier — f veuve
 whom you have oppressed, *this* poor woman whom you have
 79 opprimée pauvre

forsaken, *these* unfortunate beings whom you have despised,
*abandonnée malheureux * méprisés*
 will accuse you (in the) day of judgment. *That* woman is
accuser 57 au du jugement
 whimsical, she changes her resolution every day.
*capricieux —ger de * ré— tous les jours*

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela.*

The demonstrative pronouns are expressed, *this* by *ceci*, and *that* by *cela*, when they are used to point at some object without naming it ; example :

This is for me, and that for you.
ceci est pour moi, et cela pour vous.

Do not do *that*, I will do it myself. If you refuse me *that*,
 * H 57 moi-même —ser 57
 you will repent it. *This* is good, *that* is bad; *this* is for
se repentir en 58
 me, and *that* for you. Why did you do *that*? You

me, and *that* for you. Why did you do *that*? You should not speak of *that* before (any body.) *That* is good to eat. You are very curious; you always ask why *this*, and why *that*.

RULE 74.—*ce qui, ce que.*

1. The pronouns *that which*, and *what*, when used to signify *that which*, are usually expressed by *ce qui* for the nominative case, *ce dont* for the genitive, *ce à quoi* for the dative, and *ce que* for the accusative; example:

*What gratifies the senses, softens the heart.
ce qui flatte les sens, amollit le cœur.*

2. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* is usually repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it be followed by a pronoun, a verb, or a substantive; but not if it be followed by an adjective without any substantive; examples:

*What renders men miserable is cupidity.
ce qui rend les hommes misérables, c'est la cupidité.*

What you say is true.
ce que vous dites est vrai—not c'est vrai.

1. Consider, O man! *what* the law of God commands,
—*dérér* H *loi* —*der*
and *what* society requires of you.—2. *What* I ask from
société demander 46 *demandeur*
you, is a reciprocal friendship, as it existed between
46 *reciproque* 31 *amitié telle qu'elle existait* 31 *entre*
your father and mine.—1. Tragedy excites terror: it is
69 *tragédie* 9 —*ter* 9 —*reur* *c'est*
that *which* renders it tragical: the epic poem excites ad-
50 —*que* *épique* 31 *poème* m 9
miration; it is that *which* renders it heroical.
50 *héroïque*

1. Education is to the mind *what* cleanliness is to the body.—2. *What* I fear most is treason.—1. I know *what* you speak of. *What* you did expect has not taken place.—2. *What* you fear is to be discovered.—1. *What* shines outwardly, is sometimes far from being substantial. inwardly.—1. *What* costs little, is too dear, when it is of no use.

9 — esprit 9 propreté
corps craindre le plus trahison savoir (ir)
174 s'attendre A avoir
lieu craindre d' découvert
briller au-dehors quelquefois très-peu * solide
au-dedans coûter peu trop cher il n'est d'aucun
usage.

RULE 75.—*celui-ci, celui-là, &c.*

When the demonstrative pronouns refer to several substantives antecedent, they are expressed, *this*, by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci*; *these*, by *ceux-ci* or *celles-ci*; *that*, by *celui-là* or *celle-là*; *those*, by *ceux-là* or *celles-là*. *Celui-ci, &c.* mark the nearest object; *celui-là, &c.* the most distant; example:

There are two snuff-boxes; this is a gold one, that is only gilt.
Voilà deux tabatières; celle-ci est d'or celle-là n'est que dorée.

The state of the brute is very different from that of man; that is clothed and armed by nature; this is not; that soon attains its vigour and perfection, this continues long in infancy. Which of these houses do you advise me to buy? This will cost me six hundred pounds and that seven. I do not like either of them; if, however, you take one, I would advise you to buy this rather than that.

état — f très-différent 76 4
vêtu armé 4 — ne l'est pas
bientôt 172 arriver à 63 vigueur — rester
long in enfance laquelle * conseiller
57 d'acheter coûter 57 livre sterling
aimer ni l'une ni l'autre cependant
en prendre (ir) A une conseiller 57 d'

RULE 76.—*celui, celle, that.*

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by a noun in the genitive case, or by a relative pronoun, they are always expressed, *that* by *celui* or *celle*, and *those* by *ceux* or *celles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference; examples:

He has changed his own name for *that* of his cousin.

Il a changé son nom, et pris celui de son cousin.

These books are better than *those* which I have sold.

ces livres valent mieux que ceux que j'ai vendus.

The system of Copernicus, which asserts that the earth

système Copernic 14 assurer que terre

turns round the sun, is more probable than *that* of Ptolemy,

tourner autour du soleil — Ptolomée

who is of a contrary opinion. The sight of the mind is more

contraire 31 — vue f esprit

extensive than *that* of the body. The goods of fortune are

étendu corps bien 4 — f

not to be compared with *those* of the mind. The disorders

** * comparables a maladie*

of the mind are more dangerous than *those* of the body. The

—eux

term of life is short; *that* of beauty still more so.

temps 4 vie court 4 encore davantage 54

Eternal happiness is infinitely superior to *that* which a man

81 éternel bonheur —ment au-dessus de

can possess in this world. The injuries which we re-

pouvoir posséder monde m outrage 79

ceive from a man in a passion, are not so great as *those* which

*en * colère si 37*

the same man commits in cool blood.

commettre (ir) de sang froid

All men hate *those* who are unmindful of a (good

haïr ne sont pas reconnoissant ser-

turn). We ought to encourage *those* who apply themselves

*vice m devoir A * —rager s'appliquer 61*

to arts and sciences. This play will do you more honour

4 — — comédie 57 plus 18 honneur

than all *those* you have composed before.

83 faites auparavant.

RULE 77.—*celui qui*, he who.

☞ When the personal pronouns are the antecedents of *who*, *hat*, or *which*, they are expressed in French, *he who*, by *celui qui*; *she who*, by *celle qui*, *they who*, by *ceux qui*, m. and by *celles qui*, f. example:

They who despise learning know not the value of it.

ceux qui méprisent les sciences, n'en connoissent pas le prix.

He who cannot keep a secret is incapable of governing.

ne pouvoir garder — — 139 gouverner

Nobody is more speedily oppressed, than *he who*

personne ne promptement opprimer

fears nothing; because security is often the beginning
craindre 118 4 *sécurité* commencement
 of calamity. *They who* are not satisfied with what they
malheurs pl content de 74
 possess at present, will probably never be pleased with what
posséder à présent 172 120 le 54 de 74
they may possess in future. *He who* never was acquainted
pouvoir D à l'avenir 120 a éprouvé
 with adversity, says Seneca, has seen the world but on one
 * 9 — *té* *Sénèque n'a vu* que d'
 side, and is ignorant of half the scenes of nature. *They who*
côté * *il ignore* * *la moitié des* — 4
 overcome their passions, conquer their greatest enemies.
surmonter — *terrasser* ennemi

RULE 78.—*celui* and *qui*, must be joined.

✧ When the relative pronouns *who*, *that*, or *which*, are separated in English from their antecedents, *he*, *she*, or *they*, they must be joined in French, and then the second part of the sentence is put the first; example :

He is contemptible, *who* supports idleness *.
celui qui encourage la paresse, est méprisable.
not, celui est méprisable, qui encourage la paresse.

They do not know the human heart, *who* trust to the
connoître *humain* 31 *cœur* *se fier*
 vain promises of men. *They* do not always succeed, *who*
promesse 172 *réussir*
 best take their measures. *He* is happy *who*
le mieux 172 *prendre (ir)* *mesure* *heureux*
 wants nothing. *They* are unworthy the glory of heaven,
ne manque de rien *indigne de* *gloire* *ciel*
who give themselves up to the pleasures of this world. *They*
se livrer 61 * *plaisir* *monde* m
 are happy *who* content themselves with little.
se contenter 61 *de* *peu*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

We cannot sufficiently esteem those judges, who
 98 *ne pouvoir (ir)* *assez* *estimer* *juge*

* Turn, he who supports idleness is contemptible; and so on, for all other sentences of the same kind.

always directed by equity, never do any thing through
*toujours dirigés 4 équité 120 faire * rien par*
 favour or solicitations. We naturally expect from
faveur 21 solli— —rellement 172 attendre
 others what we have done to them before. They who
autres 74 faire 47 auparavant 77
 oppress the poor to increase their riches, shall be
opprimer pauvre pl pour augmenter richesse pl
 punished by God.
punis de

A philosopher shuns both riches and dignities; he
*—phe éviter * richesse 9 10 —té*
 fears these, and despises the former. They (are
craindre 75 mépriser celles-là 78 se
 mistaken) who think that kings are the happiest of all
tromper croire (ir) roi 9
 men. Cyrus began the Persian monarchy, and Nimus
commencer c de Perse 17 —chie —
 that of Assyria. Alexander, though ambitious, was sensible
76 rie —dre quoique —tieux B persuadé
 that he who coveted nothing was more happy than he who
77 désirer B 118 B 77
 aimed at the possession of the whole world.
aspirer B à — entier 31 monde m

Cæsar said, after the battle of Pharsalia; he is
César dire (ir) c bataille —sale 78
 a great general, who can expose himself like a
pouvoir (ir) —ser se 61 comme
 private soldier, during the battle; but he is still greater
simple soldat pendant mais 78 encore
 who can rejoice like a private man after the victory.
se réjouir comme simple particulier après victoire
 Wisdom (is content) with what is present, and expects
le sage se contenter de 74 pré— attendre
 patiently what is to come. Those who speak without
patiemment 74 à venir 77 sans
 reflection, are liable to say many (foolish things.)
réflexion exposé à bien 18 sottisse f

Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the
9 n'est autre chose qu' entier 31 —té
 eternal rule of things; vice is the infringement of that
éternel 31 règle f 4 9—m infraction
 rule, this causes the misery of men, that makes them
75 faire (ir) malheur 4 75 rendre 57
 happy: let us, therefore, love that, and detest this.
donc 172 H 75 avoir H en horreur

He is truly a good man, who has a natural abhorrence
 78 *vraiment* * *homme de bien* 31 —*rel* *horreur*
 of vice and love for virtue.
 4 — *m* *l'amour de* 4

CHAPTER VII.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—See page 27.

RULE 79.—*qui, que, who, &c.*

☞ 1. The relative pronouns *who, that, and which*, are expressed by *qui*, when they are in the nominative case; *whom, that, and which* are expressed by *que* when they are in the accusative; examples:

The man *who* speaks; the book *which* is on the table.

l'homme qui parle; le livre qui est sur la table.

The woman *whom* I see; the watch *which* I have.

la femme que je vois; la montre que j'ai.

Cicero was one of those *who* were sacrificed to the
Cicéron c c sacrifier

vengeance of the triumvirs. The woman *whom* God formed
 — — — — — *former c*

with one of Adam's ribs was the cause of his sin. The
d' une 17 côte c — péché

books *which* you read are good, but difficult to (be
livre m lire (ir) difficile à

understood). Synonymous terms are words *which* signify
comprendre 9 —me 31 terme mot 7 —fier

the same thing. Marcus Aurelius used to say, that he
même chose f Marc-Aurèle avoir B coutume de dire

would not part with what he had learned for all the
*vouloir (ir) E donner * 74 B apprendre (ir)*

gold (in the) world; and that he had more glory from
or du monde retirer B plus 18 de

what he had read or written, than from all the king-
 74 B lire (ir) écrire que

doms he had conquered. Titus spent eighty millions
 83 B — conquérir (ir) dépenser c —

in the public games *which* he once gave to the Roman
 31 jeux une fois 172 donner c 31

people.

RULE 80.—*dont, de qui, duquel.*

☞ 1. The relative pronouns *whose, of whom, or of which*, are usually expressed in French by *dont* for all sorts of objects; examples:

I know the man *of whom* your brother complains.
je connois l'homme dont votre frère se plaint.
 I have seen the house *of which* you speak.
j'ai vu la maison dont vous parlez.

2. If the pronouns *whose*, *of whom*, and *of which* were joined to a noun preceded by any preposition, we should use *de qui* instead of *dont*, with reference to persons; and *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, or *desquelles* with reference to animals and things, and they must be placed after the substantive governed by the preposition; examples:

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust.
c'est un homme à la discrétion de qui je n'ose me fier.

Providence, without the assistance *of which* we cannot succeed.

la providence sans le secours de laquelle nous ne pouvons réussir.

1. All the advantages *which* we enjoy on earth come from God.—1. The same pride which makes us blame the faults from *which* we think ourselves free, induces us to condemn the good qualities which we have not.—2. Many affect to contemn those honours (with the) desire *of which* they are inflamed.—1. The young man *of whom* I have spoken to you, deserves (to be) encouraged. 2. Alexander, to *whose* courage they give (so many) praises, died at thirty-three years of age.—1. The clemency *of which* men make a virtue is often practised (out of) vanity.—2. The daughter of Minos gave a thread to Theseus, by means *of which* he (went out) of the labyrinth.

avantage dont jouir sur 4 terre venir
orgueil 79 faire 48 blâmer
croire (ir) nous 48 exempt porter 48 à
condamner —té 79 plusieurs
affecter de mépriser les honneur du désir
enflammé homme
parler 47 mériter d'être encourager Alexandre
— 98 donner tant 18 louange f mourir c à
l'âge de trente-trois ans clémence
faire pratiqué par
fil — donner c fil Thésée au moyen
sortir c —the m

RULE 81.—*qui*, or *lequel*, &c.

✧ When the relative pronouns *whom* or *which* are in the dative, or after a preposition, they are usually expressed by *qui*, in speaking of persons, and always by *lequel* or *laquelle*,

lesquels, or lesquelles, in speaking of animals and things; examples:

The man *to whom* I write is very learned.

l'homme à qui j'écris est très-savant.

The reasons upon *which* I rely, are without answer.

Les raisons sur lesquelles je me fonde sont sans réplique.

N. B. *Lequel, laquelle, &c.* must be also employed instead of *qui* in the nominative, when the relative is separated from its antecedent by another substantive to which it might seem to relate.

The glory to *which* heroes sacrifice, is often a false glory.

It is evident that there is a God, by *whom* all things are governed. Idleness is a vice to *which* young people are much inclined. He who gets rich knows not for *whom* he gets them, nor for *whose* sake he is concerned. Ulysses

(carried away) the palladium in *which* the Trojans had particular confidence; it was a statue of Minerva, on *which* depended all the success of the war. Lying is a vice for *which* we cannot have (too much) horror. The canal of Languedoc runs across a river over *which* a bridge is built in the form of an aqueduct, under *which* the river continues its course.

*4 héros — fier fausse
il é— il y a tout * est
gouverner paresse 9 — m jeunes gens
très-enclin 77 amasser 7 savoir (ir)
48 qui * * s'intéresse
emporter c — dans Troyens B une
— lier 31 confiance ce B — f Minerve de
dépendre B succès guerre mensonge m — m
98 ne pouvoir (ir) trop 18 horreur
— du — passer sur rivière sur
pont en * forme * aqueduc sous
continuer cours*

RULE 82.—*où, or lequel, &c.*

When a relative pronoun comes after a preposition, and refers to an inanimate object, it is almost indifferently expressed by *où* or by *lequel, laquelle, &c.* provided the verb denote motion or rest, at least figuratively; example:

Avoid the faults into *which* I have fallen.

Evitez les fautes où or dans lesquelles je suis tombé.

Many (learned people) do not approve the principles from *which* the system of Descartes is derived. If I had

*bien des savant approuver — pes m
système — dériver E*

known before, the deplorable condition to which you
connoître auparavant dé— 31 état
 are reduced, I would certainly have sent you some
réduire certainement 172 *envoyer* 57 7
 money. The allies of Rome, ashamed to acknowledge as
argent *alliés* — *honteux de reconnaître pour*
 their head a city from which liberty seemed banished.
maîtresse ville f — *té paroître B bannie*
 shook off a yoke which they bore with pain.
*secouer c ** *joug* *porter B* *peine*

RULE 83.—Relative Pronouns never understood.

☞ The relative pronouns *whom*, *which*, and also the conjunction *that*, are often understood in English, but *qui* or *que* are never understood in French, and particular care must be had to use them every time they could be used in English; examples:

I think he will come. It is to you I speak.
je crois qu'il viendra. *C'est à vous que je parle.*

The exercise you have given me to write, is too long
thème *donner* 57 *à écrire* *trop* —
 and too difficult. The company I keep is very honest.
difficile — *gnie fréquenter* *honnête*

The wine we drank yesterday was very good. The man
vin *boire (ir) c hier* B

I have spoken to, is just come from France. The reasons
parler 174 *vient d'arriver* — *raison*

I rely upon a solid. We must not keep the promises
se fonder 174 *solide* *il faut* *garder* *promesse*

which are hurtful to those we have made them to. I
 79 *nuisible* *ceux on* 98 *faites* 174

think you are in the right. I believe they will make peace
penser *avoir ** *raison* 98 *faire paix*

this year. I will never forget the favour you have done me.
année 120 *oublier* *grâce* *faite* 57

RULE 84.—Place of these Pronouns.

The relative pronouns (*qui*, *que*, *dont*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c.) are always put immediately after the nouns to which they have reference, and agree with them in gender, number, and person; example:

It is you who have told me so.
c'est vous qui me l'avez dit.

Remember, O man, that thy station on earth is ap-
se ressouvenir n *état* 4 *terre*

pointed by the wisdom of the Eternal, *who* knows thy
fixé *sagesse* *Eternel* 78 *connoître*
heart, *who* sees the vanity of thy wishes, and *who* often
cœur *voir (ir)* — *té* *désir* *souvent*
rejects thy prayer. The world is a stage upon which
rejeter *prière* *monde m* *théâtre m* 81
men, always masked, play upon one another. Let our
toujours masqué se jouer les uns des autres *que*
appetites obey reason, to which they are subjected by
appétit obéir H à la raison 81 *soumettre (ir)*
the law of nature. Grandeur of air, accompanied with
loi 9 — *un air de grandeur accompagné de*
freedom of manners, are qualifications which attract
manière f. pl. aisé *est une qualité* *gagner*
general approbation.
31 9 —

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Chuse a man whom you esteem, who is able and
Choisir H 79 *estimer F* *avoir F le pouvoir*
willing to serve you in need. The thing of which a
la volonté de servir 57 *au besoin* *à* 81
miser thinks the least, is to relieve the poor. The
avare penser *moins c'est à soulager les pauvres*
christian yoke is safer than full liberty; it is a
joug du christianisme sûr une —té 170
yoke that makes the practice of virtue pleasant, that
79 rendre pratique f 4 agréable
secures us from the violence of passions, and that prevents
garantir 57 — *4 — empêcher*
us from ruining ourselves. We should always re-
57 139 perdre nous 57 devoir A nous res-
member the cares of those by whom we have been brought
souvenir des soins ceux 81 élevé
up.
* *

Death is an evil for which there is no remedy.
Mort mal à 81 il n'y a point 18 remède
Philip said to his son Alexander, on giving him Aristotle
Philippe dire (ir) c —dre en donner lui 57 —te
for his preceptor, learn, under so good a master, to
* *précepteur apprendre H un si * maître à*
avoid the faults into which I have fallen. Prudence and
éviter faute f 8 je suis tomber — 9
moderation gain us the esteem of those with whom we
modé— gagner 57 estime 81

converse. Men do not reflect enough on all the dangers
 —ser réfléchir assez sur —
 to which they are exposed. Let us consider the effects of
 81 —ser —dérer H effet
 prosperity and adversity, and then we shall easily
 prospérité 9 21 —té alors aisément 172
 perceive which is the most desirable. Let us
 apercevoir laquelle dé—
 endeavour to render ourselves able to fulfil the duties
 tâcher H de rendre nous 57 capables de remplir devoir
 of the situation to which God destines us. Chuse well
 état 81 —ner 57 choisir H
 the friend to whom you intend to give your confidence.
 81 vouloir (ir) * confiance
 After the existence of God (there is nothing) of which I
 après — il n'y a rien 80
 doubt less than of the immortality of the soul. Ulysses
 douter moins —te âme —
 crossing the sea, commanded his soldiers to stop their
 traverser mer —der c à soldat de boucher 66
 ears with wax, and caused himself to (be tied) to the
 oreilles 7 cire f faire (ir) c se 57 * attacher
 mast of the ship to keep himself from the charms of
 mât vaisseau pour défendre se 57 charmes
 the Syrens.
 syrènes.

Ignorance is a dishonour to human kind, and in
 — déshonneur pour 4 genre humain en
 a manner reduces men below the beasts, whose
 quelque manière 59 réduire au dessous de 80
 ignorance is the consequence of their nature, and not the
 corse— —
 effect of neglect or indifference.
 effet 4 négligence 10 indifférence

CHAPTER VIII.

OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.—See p. 27.

RULE 85.—qui? who?

✧ The interrogative pronouns *who*, *whose*, *to whom*, &c. are expressed by *qui* or *qui est ce-qui* for the nominative, and by *qui* in all other cases; but never by *que* or *dont*, as are the relative pronouns before mentioned; examples:

Who is there? of whom do you speak? whom will you consult?
 Qui est là? de qui parlez-vous? qui consulterez-vous, &c.

Who doubts that a young man who loves virtue and science,
douter *jeune* 9
 enjoys more solid happiness, than he who spends his
ne jour *F d'un* *slide* 31 *bonheur* 77 *passer*
 life in dissipation and pleasure? Who goes there? to whom
dans 4 — *plaisir* *là*
 do you speak? whom can one trust to (now a days)?
 * 91 *parler* *pouvoir* (ir) 98 *se fier* 174 *aujourd'hui*
 For whom does a miser get riches? whom shall I apply
 * *avare amasser* 92 7 *s'adresser*
 to? who is the man who can be certain of constant happi-
 174 *pouvoir* *F* *un* — 31 *bon-*
 ness? whom shall I believe henceforth?
heur *croire* (ir) *désormais*

RULE 86.—*lequel, laquelle, which?*

✚ When the word *which* is interrogatively used, it is always expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular, and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural; examples:

Which of your brothers is married? Which of your sisters
lequel de vos frères est marié? *laquelle de vos sœurs*
 learn French?
apprend le Français?

Of all these pictures, which should you like best,
tableau *aimer le mieux*
 and which do you think (is worth) most money? I
croire (ir) *valoir* *le plus* 18 *argent*
 have heard that one of your brothers is dead; pray
apprendre (ir) *mort* *je vous prie*
 tell me which. Which of your sisters learn geo-
dire (ir) H 56 *apprendre* 9 *géo-*
 graphy? Which of the maritime powers has the best
graphie —31 *puissance* *meilleur*
 navy? England. Which of these horses will you buy?
marine *f* *cheval vouloir* (ir) *Δ*
 You have read Telemachus and Jerusalem Delivered;
lire (ir) —*que* *la* — *délivrée*
 which of these two poems do you prefer?
poèmes 91 *préférer*

RULE 87.—*quel? what?*

✚ When the pronoun *what* is used in an interrogative sentence, it is always expressed by *quel* or *quelle* before a substantive singular, and by *quels* or *quelles* before a substantive plural; examples:

What book do you read? what lesson have you learnt?
quel livre lisez-vous? *quelle leçon avez-vous apprise?*

What are your reasons? *raison* What are her motives? *motif* What passion is he inclined to? *passion enclin 174* What dreadful news! *fâcheux nouvelle* What crime has this man committed (that he should be crime m 92 *commettre (ir) pour le* punished, so severely? *punir si sévèrement* What is the opinion of your father on that affair; *sur affaire f nouvelle pl apprises en* What news have you learnt in town to-day? *malheur pouvoir après que perdre* What misfortune can we fear after we have lost every thing?

105

RULE 88.—*que?* what?

When the interrogative pronoun *what* signifies *what thing*, and is not governed by a preposition, it is usually expressed by *que* or *qu'est ce que*; example:

What do you ask? *que demandez-vous?* or *qu'est ce que vous demandez?*
 What are men before God? *devant* What avail riches without health? *servir richesse sans* What does he want? *demandeur* What have you done with la santé *faire de* your books? *jardin qu'est ce* What were you doing in the garden? *did the master tell you? What do you say of the French*
que maître dire B 57 31
 revolution?

RULE 89.—*quoi*, what?

When the word *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a preposition, and signifies *what thing*, it is always expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence is interrogative or not; example:

What are you thinking of? *à quoi pensez-vous?*
 If you be idle when young, you will not know *A paresseux vous êtes jeune savoir (ir)*
what to apply yourself to in your (old age.) What are you
appliquer vous 57 174 *vieillesse*
 speaking of? *On what will you interrogate him? In*
parler A 174 sur vouloir (ir) A —ger 57
what am I guilty? Of what do you accuse me? In what
coupable accuser 57
 pray have I neglected to fulfil my duty? *What*
je vous prie négliger de remplir devoir
 are they complaining of? *What do you aim at? What does*
** se plaindre A 174 viser 174*
 your brother apply himself to?
 92 *s'appliquer 174*

CHAPTER IX.

OF INTERROGATIONS.

RULE 90.—*où, d'où, comment, &c.*

Besides the interrogations of which we have treated before, a question is often asked with the adverbs *combien, comment, pourquoi, où, d'où*, and some others; examples:

Where are you going; whence do you come? &c.

où allez-vous? d'où venez-vous?

How (comes it to pass,) that scarcely (any body) lives
arrive-t-il presque personne n'est
 content with his condition? (*How long*) have you lived in
 — *de — combien de temps demeurer*
 France? *How* can the members of the same body deceive
pouvoir membre 92 corps se tromper
 and hate one another? *why* do you do that? *where* have
se haïr les uns les autres? pourquoi faire cela?
 you been? *how many* shillings in the pound?
schelling à livre f

RULE 91—*Pronouns after the Verb.*

✧ 1. The personal pronouns are put after the verb of its auxiliary, when it is used interrogatively; examples:

Will you come? will they speak?
viendrez-vous? parleront-ils?

2. When the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put a *-t-* with two hyphens between them; examples:

Does she sing well? will he come?
chante-t-elle bien? viendra-t-il?

1. Who art thou, O man, who presumest on thy own
être présumer de
 wisdom?—1. Have you seen my father?—2. Has he
sagesse voir (ir)
 given you any money for me?—2. Will he come to-morrow
donner 57 de l'argent 49 venir demain
 to see me? Are you in good health? Are you going soon
** voir 57 santé aller bientôt*
 into the country? Is there (any thing) greater than to
à campagne f y a-t-il rien 18 40 de
 (make use) of one's talents to procure the public happiness?
*employer * ses — à —rer 31 bonheur*

RULE 92.—*Substantive before the Verb.*

✚ 1. When a substantive is the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, the substantive is placed in French before the verb; but one of these pronouns *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles* must be put after the verb, as if there were no substantive before; examples:

Is your father at home? are your sisters learned?

votre père est-il à la maison? vos sœurs sont-elles savantes?
as if it were: your father is he at home? your sisters are they learned? and so on for all others.

2. However when the sentence begins with an interrogative expression, as, who, *qui*, what, *que* or *quoi*, how much, *combien*, where, *où*, when, *quand*, &c. the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles* may be omitted, and the substantive should be placed after the verb, and even after the participle, in the compound tenses; examples:

What does your son do?

que fait votre fils?

Where is my uncle gone?

où est allé mon oncle?

N B. In the preceding sentences the verbs have no object which ought to be placed after; otherwise the first rule should be applied.

1. Was ever (*any body*) more faithful to his country
c jamais personne m fidèle pays
 than Regulus, who would rather expose himself to certain
aimer c mieux se 57 une 31
 death, than not fulfil his engagements? Alas! said
mort 40 ne pas remplir — Hélas dire c
 Telemachus, I am but too certain that my father is dead;
Télémaque je ne suis que trop —
 will go even to hell to seek his ghost: did
aller (ir) même enfer pl pour chercher ombre
 not Theseus descend thither? yet the profane Theseus
Thésée —dre c y 57 cependant —
 wanted to insult the infernal deities, and it is piety which
*vouloir B * outrager 31 — divinité c'est 4 pitié*
 is my motive; did not Hercules descend thither? I am
motif — c y 57
 not Hercules, but (an attempt to imitate him is noble),
mais il est beau d'oser l'imiter
 did not Orpheus, by the recital of his misfortunes,
avoir A Orphée récit malheur
 move the heart of Pluto? I am more worthy of com-
touché cœur Pluton digne 19
 passion than Orpheus, for my loss is greater. Has my
car perte f

sister written to her husband? Is *that* good to eat? Has
écrire mari cela à manger
 (any body) asked for me? Is the French-master come? Is
quelqu'un demander * 57 17 *venir*
 your book lost? Is your lesson learnt.

perdre leçon apprendre (ir)
 2. Who is that tall, pale man? What does your sister
qui 30 31 *
 apply to? How much does that coat cost to you? What
s'appliquer 174 * *habit coûter* 47
 was the master saying to you? At what o'clock will your
dire (ir) B à 87 *heure f*
 brother (set off)? what have those children done? when
partir *enfant faire (ir)*
 did your friend return?
est revenir

RULE 93.—*est-ce là ? n'est-ce pas là ?*

The English prefix the words *this* or *that* for the singular and *these* or *those* for the plural, to the possessive pronouns *his*, *our*, *your*, *their*, &c. when they ask whose is such or such a thing; these questions are expressed in French; is that, by *est-ce là ?* are these, by *sont-ce là ?* is not that, by *n'est-ce pas là ?* examples:

Is that your son? are these your sons?

est-ce là votre fils ? sont-ce là vos fils ?

Is not that your house? are not these your houses?

n'est-ce pas là votre maison ? ne sont-ce pas là vos maisons ?

Is that your house? Are these your gardens? Is not that my book? Are not these your pens? Is this your muff?

manchon

Are these your gloves? Is not that my hat? Are not these

gant

chapeau

your apples? Is that your daughter? Are these your bro-

pomme

thers? Are not these your sisters? Are these your horses?

Is not that your dog? Are not these your gardens?

RULE 94.—*est-ce que ? n'est-ce pas ?*

1. The English often ask a question, less to be informed if such a thing be or be not, than to have the approbation of others upon what they say; these sort of questions are expressed in French by *est-ce que*, without negation, if the first part of the sentence be negative in English; example:

He is not dead, is he? *est-ce qu'il est mort ?*

2. They are rendered by *n'est-ce pas* at the end of the sentence, when the first part is affirmative, and the second negative; example:

He is dead, is he not?—*Il est mort, n'est-ce pas.*

1. It does not rain, *does it.*—2. We have seen the
pleuvoir (ir) voir (ir)
 ing, have we not, brother?—1. It is not cold, is it?—2. You
 64 *il fait froid*
 learn French, do you not?—1. Your father is not dead,
apprendre (ir) le François
 he?—2. It is dinner-time, is it not?—2. It is fine weather,
temps de dîner il fait temps
 it not?—2. You have received a letter from your father,
recevoir lettre f
 have you not?

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, &c.

When was Rome built? *quand c 92f bâtir 87* the achievements
 of king Romulus? *exploit* how long did he reign; what is the
 — *combien de temps 91 régner c 87*
 history of Tarquinius Superbus? *when, and (for what)*
histoire Tarquin le Superbe quand pourquoi
 was he expelled from Rome? *what efforts did he*
c chasser 87 efforts m
 make (in order to) be restored? *what was the number of*
faire c pour rétablir 87 c nombre m
 the Roman kings, and how long did the regal
*de Rome 31 combien de temps * royal 31*
 authority subsist? *what kind of government suc-*
autorité 92 subsister c 87 sorte f gouvernement suc-
 ceeded at Rome? *who were the first consuls? how*
céder c c premier — comment
 did Brutus shew his zeal for liberty? *when were the*
** 92 montrer c zèle m 4 liberté c*
 decemvirs created? *why were they deposed? what*
décemvir 92 créer pourquoi c déposer 87
 kind of government followed? *when were the mili-*
suire (ir) c c —
 tary tribunes created with consular authority as
taire 31 tribun 92 créer — laire 31
 Rome? *who were the first plebeian consuls? how*
c plébéien 31
 was the first triumvirate formed? *what provinces wer-*
c —rat 92 formé 87 — f c
 assigned to the triumvirs? *what were the conquest-*
— gner — 87 c conquête f
 of Julius Cæsar in Great Britain? *what (account*
Jules-César dans la Bretagne f 88 rapporte-

have we) of Cæsar after the civil wars? when and by whom
t-on 14 après
 was he slain?
c tuer

How long, Cataline, wilt thou abuse our patience?
Jusqu'à quand Catalina abuser de —
 How long shall thy frantic rage baffle the efforts of
frénétique — f 92 se jouer des —
 justice? (To what height) meanest thou to carry thy in-
— f jusqu'où avoir dessein de porter
 solence? Seest thou not that the senators are apprised of
— voir (ir) que sénateur informer
 thy conspiracy? Wast thou not last night in the house of
—ration B hier au soir
 Lucca, with many other associates in guilt and madness?
plusieurs complices de ton crime 63 folie
 Darest thou deny this? Why art thou silent? Oh, im-
oser nier le garder le silence
 mortal Gods! what country do we inhabit? what city do we
—tel 31 87 pays habiter 87 ville f
 belong to? what government do we live under? Hast
appartenir 174 87 vivre (ir) 174 être
 thou not rendered thyself infamous by every vice that can
rendre te 57 infâme tout 106 m. pl. pouvoir
 brand a private life? What guilt has not stained thy
déshonorer privé 31 87 crime m souiller
 hands? What pollution has not defiled thy whole body, &c.
87 infamie souiller corps
 —Cicero against Catiline.

(How many) years from the creation to the deluge? in
combien 18 années 176 création — m
 how many days did God create the world? who were the
combien 18 92 créer c monde c
 first man and woman? who were their sons? what was
premier 30 27 c c
 their occupation? when did Enoch flourish? what became
— 92 fleurir c que devint-il
 of him? who was his son? (how long) did he live?
** * qui c combien de temps vivre (ir) c*
 what was the usual length of life at that time? by
B ordinaire 31 longueur 4 époque f
 whom was the tower of Babel founded? on what design, and
c 92 tour f bâtir à dessein
 when? why was the building (laid aside)? when was
quand c 92 bâtit f abandonné c 92
 Abraham called by God? what is the history of his life.
appeler de 87

(How many) years from the vocation of Abraham to the
combien 18 176 —

departure of the Israelites from Egypt? whose son was
départ Israëlites Egypte de qui B 92
 Isaac? when was he born? who was his wife? who were
 — * *naître (ir) c c femme c*
 his sons? when did Jacob live? (how many) sons had
 92 — *vivre (ir) c combien 18 c*
 he? what is the history of Joseph? when and upon whose
 87 — *à l'inv-*
 invitation did Jacob and his family (go down) to Egypt?
tation de qui * 92 *famille aller c en*
 when was Moses born? how was he educated? by whose
 92 *Moïse c c élevé par le secours*
 assistance, and when did he bring the Israelites out of
de qui quand emmener c hors
 Egypt? what miracles attended the Israelites at their
l' 87 — accompagner c
 departure from Egypt and through the deserts? who was
sortie l' dans déserts c
 their high priest? when was the law given to Moses? who
grand-prêtre c 92 loi donnée
 was Moses successor?
c 17 le —seur

What is the history of Joshua, and what are his wars?
 87 *Josué guerre*
 when did he and the Israelites come to the possession of
 45 92 *entrer c en* * —
 Canaan? when came Saul to the throne? by what means,
 — *monter c 92 sur trône m moyen*
 and when, did David obtain the kingdom? how long
 92 *David obtenir c royaume combien de temps*
 did he reign? who were his sons? how long reigned Solomon?
régnier c c Sa— 92
 when did he dedicate the temple? what was his character?
dédier c — m 87 c caractère
 what (is recorded) of Judith? what was the fate of Jo-
que rapporte-t-on — c sort Jo-
 siah? how long did he reign? when and by whom was Je-
sias c c
 rusalem burned? what is said of Daniel? what is the his-
 92 f *brûler 88 98 dire 87*
 tory of his life? how long did he live? when was Jesus
vivre (ir) c 92
 born? what was his mission? by whom and when was he
naître c 87 B — qui c
 crucified?
 —*fier*

CHAPTER X.

OF THE DIFFERENT SORTS OF QUE*.

RULE 95.—que, *admirative*.

The *que*, *admirative* answers to the English words *how* *how much*, *how many*, *what*. The adjective, if there be any, is always put after the verb in French, and before in English; examples:

How pretty you are! *how* unhappy I am!
que vous êtes jolie! *que je suis malheureuse!*

as if it were, how you are pretty! how I am unhappy! and so on for others.

How small is the part of the world which is committed to our eyes! *How* late it is to begin to live? *How* well when death is (at hand)! What (a piece of work is man)! *how* noble is his reason, *how* extensive† his faculties, and *how* admirable his form! *how* (much trouble) you take for me! What misfortunes you have undergone!

petite *partie* *monde* *m* *con-*
fiée *yeux* *que* *tard* *de commencer à vivre*
mort *proche* *l'homme est un bel*
ouvrage *raison* *étendu*
—lé *—* *forme* *de peine*
prendre (ir) *49* *de malheurs*
éprouvés

RULE 96.—que, *conditional*.

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence for the word *whether*, and in the middle, to avoid the repetition of *si*: in both cases, it governs the next verb in the subjunctive mood; example:

Whether it rain or not, I must go out directly.
qu'il pleuve ou non, il faut que je sorte sur le champ.

If I were rich, and had children, I would give them
B *riche* *que G* *enfant ?* *donner* *47*

* There are five particular sorts of *que*, called *relative*, *interrogative*, *admirative*, *conditional*, and *conjunctive*. As we have spoken at large of the two first, we will treat here only of the three others.

† The verb *être* must be repeated before every adjective.

a good education. *Whether* he come or not, I do not care.

é— venir non je ne m'en soucie

If the French master come, and I am not at home,
pas 17 maître venir A que à la maison,
tell him, I have been obliged to (go out) on business.
dire (ir) 47 83 —ger de sortir pour affaire

Whether you be rich or poor, you should be a man of probity.
riche pauvre devoir A probité

RULE 97.—que, conjunctive.

The *que* conjunctive is used particularly for the following conjunctions ; *afin que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *cependant*, *de peur que*, *depuis que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *parce que*, *quand*, and *pourquoi* ; example :

Wait till the rain is over.

Attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus.

que in that sentence stands for *jusqu'à ce que* *.

Epaminondas, having been wounded at the battle of
14 avoir blesser bataille
Mantineia, would not allow the physicians to draw
—née vouloir (ir) c permettre aux médecins de tirer
the arrow out of his wound, before he received the news
flèche f * blessure ne recevoir G nouvelle
of the victory. A miser would have all the gold (in the)
victoire avare or d.
world, yet he would not be satisfied. When you have
monde m content D
acknowledged your faults, and you have repaired them, I
reconnoître faute f que D réparées 48
will forgive you. Why did you not tell it?
pardonner 57 dire (ir) B

Our companions please us less by the charms we
compagnons plaire 47 moins charme m 83
find in their conversation, than by those they find in
trouver — que par 76 83
ours. The moment we die our fate is determined
au moment 83 mourir (ir) sort déterminer
for ever. How long is it since your father went into the
toujours combien y a-t-il est allé à
country? You shall not (go out) before it is light.
campagne f sortir ne F jour

* See, for more examples, the same rule in the grammar ; *que* governs the same mood as the conjunction for which it is used. This rule is not difficult, because the conjunction may be used as well as *que*.

Wait *till* the rain is over. Come here *that* I may speak to
attendre *pluie* *F* *passée* *venir* *ici* *parler*
 you.
 57

CHAPTER XI.

OF THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98.—Use of the Particle *on*.

☞ All vague and general expressions of reports, such as *one says, people say, it is said, it is reported, &c.* are rendered in French by the particle *on*, with the verb in the third person singular of the active voice ; example :

They speak of peace.
On parle de la paix.

N. B. When the passive verb is not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by*, it is generally expressed in French by the active verb, and the pronoun *on*, as :

Astonishing news are reported.
on rapporte des nouvelles surprenantes.

When *one* has deviated from the paths of virtue, *one*
s'est écarté *sentier* 4
 ought to endeavour to get (into them) again. It (has been)
devoir *chercher* *rentrer* *y* 57 *on* *a*
 often lamented that the origin of almost every nation is
souvent regretter *origine* *f* *presque* 106 — *f*
 either lost in fables, or buried in obscurity.
ou perdre dans 7 *f* *ensevelir* 4 — *lé*

People attribute the invention of gun-powder to
attribuer — *canon poudre* 23 *f*
 Berthold Scheward of Friburgh. It is reported that Pytha-
Fribourg *rapporter* —
 goras required a silence of five years from those he in-
gore exiger *B* — *ans* *ceux* 83 in-
 structed in philosophy.
struire *B* 4 — *phie*

RULE 99.—*l'on* for *on*.

1. *On* takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et, si, ou* ; and also after *que*, if the next word begins with *c* or *qu* ; example :

You have been or will soon be rewarded.
on vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.

2. *On* never takes an *l'* in the beginning of a sentence, nor when it is followed by *le, la, les*; examples:

They say so. Put here your letter, it will be read.
on le dit mettez-là votre lettre, on la lira
 not, *l'on le dit*; nor, *mettez-là votre lettre l'on la lira*;
 which would have a very bad sound.

1. Death arrives (in the) moment one thinks the least
arriver au — qu'on penser le moins
 of it, and one passes in an instant from pleasure to the
y 57 passer — plaisir
 grave.—1. As, when a picture is finished, one runs
tombeau de même que tableau finir court
 a risk of spoiling it, if one adds new touches to it; so
 * *risque gâter 139 50 ajouter 8 — f 52 **
 likewise you will spoil a period, if you unseasonably
phrase f mal à propos 173
 add to it synonymous words, which neither contribute to
ajouter 52 — me 31 7 119 contribuer
 the clearness of expression, nor to the embellishment of the
clarté — —lissement
 speech. We learn better what we understand, than
discours on apprendre (ir) mieux 74 comprendre
 what we do not.—2. They say that he is dead.
 74 *comprendre*

RULE 100.—*Le même*, the same.

The word *the same*, is expressed by *le même*, or *la même* for the singular, and by *les mêmes* for the plural of both genders; examples:

Is that *the same* book which I have lent you?—Yes,
Est-ce là le même livre que je vous ai prêté?—Oui,
 it is *the same*.
c'est le même.

The same manners which (are becoming) when
manière siéent quand elles sont
 natural, are ridiculous when affected. It is rare to
—rel —le elles sont —ter il — de
 see two persons of *the same* temper, and of *the same*
voir personnes caractère m
 opinion. Whatever misfortunes happen to a philosopher,
— quelque 110 malheur qui arriver —phe
 he is always *the same*. *The same* thing does not please at
toujours plaire en
 all times.
temps.

RULE 101.—*plusieurs*, many, several.

The words *many* and *several* are usually expressed by *plusieurs*, always plural of both genders; example:

I have several books for you*.

J'ai plusieurs livres pour vous.

Many poems of the first merit appear obscure because
 poème n mérite m paroître obscur parce qu
 the reader is not sufficiently acquainted with the ancient
 lecteur * assez 172 connaître * 31
 fables, historical facts, or natural objects, to which the
 — f 10 — que 31 fait — rel 31 objet 81
 poet alludes. *Many* had rather suffer the loss of life
 poète fait allusion aimer A mieux souffrir perte f 4
 than of a good name. When we apply ourselves to
 celle réputation quand 98 s'appliquer *
several sciences, we seldom succeed in any.

— 98 réussir rarement dans aucun

RULE 102.—*un autre*, another.

The pronoun *another* is usually expressed by *un autre*, and *others* by *les autres*, unless it be in the genitive, or dative; in which cases they are expressed by *autrui*, when speaking of persons not named before; examples:

I have lost my knife.

I must buy another.

J'ai perdu mon couteau, il faut que j'en achète un autre

Do not take others' goods.

Ne prenez pas le bien d'autrui.

Another would not have forgiven you so easily as
 pardonner 57 si facilement 37

I did. *Another's* disgrace often deters a tender mind
 j'ai fait 17 — 172 détourner 31 cœur

from many vices. Do not speak ill of *others*, if you wish
 bien 18 mal autres vouloir (ir)

not that *others* should speak ill of you. Charity rejoices
 que F mal 9 — té se réjouir

(in the) happiness of *others*, and is contented that *others* be
 du bonheur content F

preferred. Bear the imperfections of *others* without
 préférer souffrir n — sans vous

vexation.

troubler

* However, the word *several* is expressed by different or *différente*, when it is preceded in English by the, or a possessive pronoun.

RULE 103.—*chacun*, every one.

1. The pronouns *every one* and *every body* are both expressed by *chacun*, always masculine, unless *every one* relate to a feminine expressed before; example:

Every one thinks of himself.

chacun pense à soi.

2. The word *every* is always an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque*; example:

Every science has its principles.

chaque science a ses principes

3. The word *each* is an adjective, which being substantively used, is expressed by *chacun* always singular; example:

They have each a good place.

Ils ont chacun une bonne place.

1. *Every one* lives after his own way.—1. *Every body*
vivre (ir) à * manière

has his own faults.—1. We must give *every body* his own.—1.

* défaut il faut donner à 69 m *

After the ladies had danced all night, *every one* of them
après que dame c danser la nuit d'elles s'en
went home. 2. *Every country* has its customs and laws.

aller c chez elle pays coutume 63 loi

—3. Your brothers have *each* a good place.—1. *Every one*

must take care of himself.—3. The epic poem of Voltaire
devoir A prendre garde à soi 31 poème m —

and that of Milton have *each* their merit.—2. There is, in *every*

76 — avoir mérite 169

plant, a certain quality which renders it wholesome or hurtful.
plante f — rendre 48 salubre nuisible

—1. *Every one* has his own manner of thinking and acting.

* manière penser 139 177 agir

RULE 104.—*quelqu'un*, somebody.

1. The pronouns *somebody* and *any body* are both expressed in French by *quelqu'un*, always singular and masculine; example:

Somebody has told it me.

Quelqu'un me l'a dit.

2. The word *some* or *any* is usually expressed by *quelque* before a substantive, and by *quelqu'un* or *quelqu'une*, singular, *quelques-uns* or *quelques-unes*, plural, when they are not immediately followed by a substantive; examples:

There are some defects in your book.

il y a quelques défauts dans votre ouvrage.

Those pears are fine; I will take some.

ces peires sont belles; j'en prendrai quelques-unes.

1. When we are in town, we have almost every day
en ville *presque tous les jours*
 somebody to dine with us.—Has ever any body seriously
à dîner *92 sérieusement*
 doubted of the immortality of the soul?—2. Of the ma-
douter *—tê* *âme* *parmi*
 gistrates, some voted the death of the admiral, and some for
—trat *voter c* *amiral* ***
 his banishment; but the majority was for setting him
bannissement *—tê* *c* *pour mettre* *139* *57*
 at liberty. The vestal virgins were obliged to preserve
en *vestale* *31* *vierge* *B* *obliger de conserver*
 their virginity while they waited on the goddess Ves-
—tê *pendant que* *servir* *B ** *déesse*
 ta; if any sinned against that law, she was buried alive.
pécher *B* *contre* *B* *enterré vif*
 I have some books for you, and some also for your bro-
aussi
 ther. Gather some of those flowers.
cueillir (ir) *H* *fleur*

RULE 105.—*le tout*, the whole.

1. *The whole*, not followed by a substantive, is expressed by *le tout*, always singular and masculine; example:

I will take the whole. *Je prendrai le tout.*

2. *Every thing*, *all*, *all things*, are expressed by *tout*, without any article, and it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, when in the accusative; examples:

All is mutable in this world. He has lost every thing.
tout est variable en ce monde. il a tout perdu.

1. *The whole* is greater than the part.—1. (How much)

do you ask for the whole?—1. I will not sell
demande *partie* *combien*
the whole; I must keep a part for myself.—2. The
il faut que j'en garde *moi*
 Pyrrhonians were philosophers who doubted of every thing.
—nien *B* *—phe* *7* *douter* *B*
 —Every thing is vanity in this world.—2. Every thing dis-
—tê *dans* *monde* *m* *dé-*
 pleases you.—2. He takes every thing.—2. She has taken
plaire *57* *prendre*
 every thing for herself.—Piety refers all things to God;
elle *piété rapporter*

self-love, (on the) contrary, applies every thing to
amour-propre au —traire rapporter à
 itself.
soi

RULE 106.—*tout le*, all, the whole.

1. When the words *all* and *the whole* come before a substantive, they are both adjectives, and expressed by *tout le*, or *toute la*, for the singular, and by *tous les*, or *toutes les*, for the plural, which are repeated before every substantive; example:

I have eaten all the apples.
J'ai mangé toutes les pommes.

2. When *tout* stands for *every*, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular, except with the word *monde* taken in the sense of *persons*; example:

Every man is mortal.
Tout homme est mortel.—Tous les hommes sont mortels.

1. All the grandeur, wealth, and power of the earth,
 cannot satisfy an ambitious mind.—2. The pas-
pouvoir (ir) —faire 31—tueux esprit
 sions of youth are pliant to every impression.—2. Come
 — *jeunesse * cèdent —pl. venir H*
 and see us every day.—2. We naturally ascribe
 * *voir 57 pl. naturellement 172 attribuer*
 to God every kind of perfection, as wisdom, power;
sorte f 16 4 sagesse 10 pouvoir
 and goodness without bounds, existing through all ages,
bonté sans fin exister dans siècles m
 pervading all space, providing for all, mankind
remplir espace pourvoir (ir) a genre humain
 in general, and for every creature in particular.—1. The whole
à pl. —lier
 fleet is at sea.
flotte f en mer

RULE 107.—*tout ce qui*, all that.

↗ The words *all that*, *every thing that*, and also *whatever* signifying *all that*, are expressed in French by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*, always masculine and singular; examples:

All that you say is true. *Tout ce que vous dites est vrai.*
 All is not gold that glitters. *Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.*

All that which does not tend to the glory of God, or to the
 good of Society, is mere vanity. *Every thing that* is lofty,
 vast, or profound, expands the imagination, and dilates the
 heart. *Whatever* is good in itself, is not always approved.
Whatever tends to enlighten the understanding, or to impress
 the heart with right feelings, may be pronounced
 useful.

RULE 108.—*tout*, *quite*.

✠ The word *tout* is frequently used to express the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, *although*, or the first *as* * of a sentence where two are used. In this case it is always indeclinable, except (what is worthy of notice) before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant; examples :

She was *quite* surprised.

Elle fut tout étonnée.—indeclinable.

She is *quite* altered since her illness.

Elle est toute changée depuis sa maladie.—declinable.

Philosophers, *as* learned as they are, are sometimes
 mistaken. Your mother was *quite* cast down at that news;
 however, *as* sorry as she was, she received me kindly, and
 desired me to dine with her. This fashion is *quite* new.

Your sister is *quite* altered by her illness. Hope as
 deceitful as it is, serves at least to lead us to the
 end of life through a pleasant way. The wife, mother,
 and daughter of Darius, *as* afflicted as they were, when

* The first *as* should be expressed by *aussi*, if there be a comparison of objects, as we have seen before, Rule 37. The second *as* is always expressed by *que*, and never by *comme*.

Alexander took them prisoners, could not forbear
faire c 57 prisonnières pouvoir c s'empêcher
 admiring his generosity.
d'admirer générosité

RULE 109.—*quelque* indeclinable.

When the words *however*, *howsoever*, *though ever so*, *so much*, or *so little*, come before one or several adjectives or participles, they are expressed by *quelque* indeclinable, which is repeated before every adjective. The words are placed thus; 1. *Quelque*. 2. The adjective. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive mood. 5. The substantive; the rest as in English; example:

Though your faults be ever so great.

1. *Quelque* 2. *grandes* 3. *que* 4. *soient* 5. *vos fautes*,
 they will forgive you.
on vous pardonnera.

As if it were, however great your faults may be, they will forgive you.

Philosophers, *however* extolled their sentiments may be,
 —*phe 9* *élevés* —
 are exposed to some practical frailties as well as other
exposer quelque pratique 31 faite aussi-bien que
 mortals. Though men be ever so incredulous during their life,
mortel incrédule pendant
 they often change their disposition when death approaches.

172 *changer * de* — *approcher*
 All the nations of the earth worship a supreme being, *how-*
adorer 31 — être m
ever different they may be in their temper, manners, and
*m pl * * 63 caractère mœurs*
 inclinations. Though fashions be ever so foolish, people
 — *mode f folles on*
 always follow them. However skilful and learned
toujours 172 suivre (ir) 57 habile savant
 we may be, let us not make a vain show of our
faire (ir) — étalage
 knowledge.
science

RULE 110.—*quelque* declinable.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *to be*, is expressed by *quelque* or *quelques*, adjective and declinable. We put 1. *Quelque*. 2. The substantive. 3. *Que*. 4. The verb in the subjunctive; the rest as in English; example:

Whatever faults you have committed, they will forgive you.
Quelques fautes que vous ayez commises, on vous pardonnera.

He who possesses virtue will be loved by all good men, in
 77 posséder 9 aimer de 106 gens de bien
 whatever country he lives. Whatever mental accomplish-
 vivre (ir) talent de
 ments a man may have received from nature, he may
 l'esprit recus 4 pouvoir A
 improve them by art and study. Charity does not
 perfectionner 57 4 étude
 rejoice in iniquity, whatever advantage she may reap
 se réjouir de 4 —té avantage recueillir (ir)
 from it. Whatever services you have done me, I have
 en 57 — m rendus 57
 been thankful (for them.)
 reconnoissant en 57

RULE 111.—*quel, que*, in two words.

The word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and the verb *to be* is expressed by *quel que*, or *quelle que*, for the singular, and by *quels que*, or *quelles que*, for the plural. We put, 1. *Quel*, or *quelle*. 2. *Que*. 3. The verb *être*, in the subjunctive mood. 4. The substantive; the rest as in English; example:

Whatever your faults may be, they will forgive you *.

Quelles que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera.

as if it were, whatever may be your faults; putting always the verb in French before the substantive.

Whatever your birth may be, whatever your elevation
 pl f naissance pl * 63 élévation
 and glory, you ought to despise nobody. Whatever may
 gloire devoir A mépriser 116
 be the power of a king, he cannot hope to increase nor
 pouvoir espérer de augmenter
 even to preserve it, if he be not (particularly attentive)
 même de conserver 60 A très-attentif
 to gain the affection of his subjects. Whatever your
 à gagner — sujet
 motives may be, your conduct will be condemned.
 motif conduite f condamné

RULE 112.—*quelque chose que*, whatever.

1 The word *whatever*, meaning *all things soever*, is

* I have repeated the same sentence in these three rules, to render more sensible the application of *quelque*, *quelques* and *quelles que*.

164 EXERCISE UPON THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.
usually expressed by *quelque chose qui* or *que*, or by *quoi que*,
with the next verb in the subjunctive; example:

Whatever he does, do not punish him.

Quelque chose qu'il fasse, or quoi qu'il fasse, ne le punisses pas.

2. *Nothing whatever* is expressed by *ne* before the verb and *quoi que ce soit* after it; example:

I have found nothing whatever.

Je n'ai trouvé quoi que ce soit.

1. *Whatever* happens to a virtuous man, he never murmurs against the Divine Providence.—2. Those who apply to nothing whatever, are very contemptible. 1. *Whatever* may happen in our family, give (me notice of it).—2. I complain of nothing whatever.—1. *Whatever* you undertake, you will never succeed in it, if you do not take your measures better.
il arriver vertueux 120 mur-
murer contre — — 77 s'ap-
pliquer très-méprisable 1. What-
ever may happen in our family, give (me notice of it).—2. I
se plaindre famille m'en avis
120 réussir y 57 mesure
mieux 172

RULE 113.—*quiconque*, whoever.

1. The pronouns *whoever* and *whosoever* are usually expressed by *quiconque* for the nominative case; example:

Whoever spares the bad, does harm to the good.

Quiconque épargne les méchants, fait tort aux bons

2. When *whomsoever* is preceded by *of*, *to*, or any other preposition, it is expressed by *qui que ce soit que* with the next verb in the subjunctive mood; example:

Of whomsoever he speaks, I do not believe him.

De qui que ce soit qu'il parle, je ne le crois pas

1. *Whoever* is prudent, will avoid talking much of any particular science in which he is not (remarkably skilled), because he has nothing to get, and much to lose.—2. *Of whomsoever* you speak, avoid calumny.—2. *To whomsoever* you apply, they will tell you the same thing.—1.
prudent éviter de parler un
—lier — dans 81 très-versé
parce qu' 118 à gagner à perdre
whomsoever you speak, avoid calumny.—2. To whom-
parler éviter 9 calomnie
soever you apply, they will tell you the same thing.—1.
s'adresser on dire 57 chose f

Whoever (is not ashamed) of his faults, (is deserving) of
 n'a pas honte faute mériter *
 punishment.—1. Whoever is modest, seldom fails
 punition modeste rarement 172 manquer
 to gain the good will of those he converses with.
 de gagner * estime 83 —ser 174

RULE 114.—*l'un l'autre*, one another.

☞ The pronouns *one another*, and *each other*, are expressed by *l'un l'autre*, or *l'une l'autre*, when speaking only of two; and by *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, for the plural. The first of these pronouns is always in the nominative; hence, if there be any preposition in English it must be put between them in French; example:

They speak ill of one another.
ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre, not *ils parlent mal de l'un l'autre*.

The faculty of interchanging our thoughts with one another has always been considered as one of the greatest
 —*le de nous communiquer* pensée à p.
 —*dérer*

privileges of reason, and as what more particularly raises
 —*lége* 4 *raison* 74 172 *élever*
 mankind above the brute. We are guilty of great
l'homme au-dessus de —*f* *coupable*
 injustice towards one another, when we are prejudiced
 —*f* *envers* 71 *nous nous laissons*
 by the features of those whom we do not know.

prévenir *trait* *ceux que* *connoître*
 The happiness of the people makes that of the prince; their
bonheur *peuple m faire* 76
 true interests are connected with one another.
intérêt *liés* *à* *pl*

RULE 115.—*l'un et l'autre*, both.

The word *both* is expressed by *l'un et l'autre*; *either* is expressed by *l'un ou l'autre*; and *neither* by *ni l'un ni l'autre* *. If there be any preposition in English, it must be repeated in French before *l'un* and before *l'autre*; example:

I speak of neither of them.
je ne parle ni de l'un ni de l'autre

I love my father and mother; I would do every
faire (ir)

* *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires *ne* before the Verb.

thing to please them *both*. The slothful and the
 105 *pour leur plaire à paresseux*
 diligent are (upon a level) if *neither* of them knows what
 — *de niveau* * * *savoir (ir) quoi*
 to do. Your brother and mine have great abilities; but
 * *faire* 69 8 *talent mais*
 they *both* make very bad use of them. *Both* suspect
 * *faire mauvais usage en* 57 *soupçonner*
 him, but *neither* will say why. Either of you
vouloir (ir) pourquoi vous pouvez
 can do me a great favour.
l'un ou l'autre plaisir.

RULE 116.—*personne*, nobody.

☞ 1. *Nobody* is expressed by *personne*, and by *ne* which is put before the verb; examples:

Nobody loves mischief as mischief. He thinks of
Personne n'aime le mal comme mal Il ne pense à
nobody.
personne.

2. Observe that *personne* is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive.

1. I know *nobody* so learned as you.—2. I know a person
connoître si savant 37 *connoître*
 more learned than you.—1. *Nobody* more impatiently
savant 39 —*tiement* 172
 suffers injuries, than he who is most forward in doing them. He
souffrir 9 77 * *le premier à faire en* 57 77
 who pleases *nobody*, is less unhappy than he whom *nobody*
plaire à malheureux 77 *à qui*
 pleases. *Nobody* becomes debauched or virtuous on a sudden.
plaire devenir débauché vertueux tout à coup.

RULE 117.—*pas un, aucun*, none.

☞ The pronouns *none, not one*, are expressed by *aucun, pas un*; both require the particle *ne* before the verb; examples:

None of the judges were against you;
Aucun des juges n'étoit contre vous;
 All the soldiers have been taken prisoners, *not one* has
Tous les soldats ont été faits prisonniers, pas un n'a
 escaped.
échappé.

Of all the nations of the earth, there is *none* but has an
il n'y en a qui n'ait
 idea of God. Of the great number of friends who sur-
idée nombre m ami envi-

round us in prosperity, there often remains not one in
ronner 57 dans 4—périté il n'en 172 rester
 adversity. Fortune exempts many (bad men) from punish-
4—té 9—f sauver bien 18 méchant 4 puni-
 ment but none from fear. I had many friends, yet
tion mais 4 crainte f B 101 cependant
 not one has relieved me.
secourir (ir) me 57.

RULE 118.—rien, nothing.

☞ The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien* and by *ne* be-
 fore the verb; example:

Nothing should hinder a christian from telling truth.
Rien ne doit empêcher un chrétien de dire la vérité.
 God requires *nothing* from us, but what is for our advan-
*demande * 57 que 74 avan-*
 tage. *Nothing* is more common than the word friendship,
tage commun 39 mot amitié
 and *nothing* more rare than a true friend. *Nothing*
n'est — véritable
 is more dangerous for a young man, than bad company.
—reux 4 —gnie
 Charity does *nothing* without consideration and order.
—té 9 faire (ir) sans — ni sans ordre

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the INDE-
 TERMINATE PRONOUNS.

Idleness is the mother of all vices. Charity is the first
 paresse 9 —m —té 9 —
 of all virtues. Though true love be ever so uncommon,
109 véritable amour rare
 yet it is less so than true friendship. With you, every
cependant 54 f 106
 road is easy, every river fordable, every country fertile.
chemin facile rivière guéable pays —
 Whatever may be the happiness of the grandes of the earth, a
111 bonheur grand
 true christian should propose to himself something more solid
chrétien devoir A proposer se 57 quelque chose de solide
 and lasting.
de plus durable
 One is truly amiable, when one is modest and learned.
98 vraiment aimable modeste savant

at the same time. Your sisters handsome and amia-
en * *temps* 106 *belle* *aima-*
 ble as they are, do not marry. Whoever cannot
ble *se marier* 113 *pouvoir (ir)*,
 bear suffering, has not a great soul. Alexander used
 * *souffrir* *âme f* — *dre avoir B*
 to say, I am (as much) indebted to Aristotle, as to
centume de *aussi* *redevable* — *te*
 my father; for, if I am indebted for life to the one, I am in-
de *l'un*
 debted for virtue to the other. You should not distrust
devoir E *vous défier*
 one another as you do.

de 114 *faire (ir)*

Whoever attentively considers the misery of human
 113 172 — *vement* *considérer* *misère f* *humain*
 life will certainly prepare for a better; since infancy
 31 172 *se préparer* *meilleure* *puisque enfance*
 (is attended) with folly, youth with disorder, and (old
se passe *dans 4 folie jeunesse* *désordre m* *vieil-*
 age) with infirmities.
lesse — *té*

If you would be happy, desire nothing too
vouloir (ir) A *heureux désirer H* 118 *avec trop*
 eagerly, rejoice not excessively, nor grieve
d'empressement se réjouir H — *vement* *ne s'affliger*
 (too much) for disasters; and (above all), never forget
trop *de malheur* *surtout* 120 *oublier*
 the concerns of your soul.
salut *âme*

Nobody can flatter himself he shall live till to-
 116 *flatter* *se qu'il* *vivre (ir)* *jusqu'à*
 morrow. The people often suffer by the wars which
demain *peuple pl.* 172 *souffrir de* *guerre*
 princes make with one another. Whoever reveals
se faire (ir) *à* 114 113 *révéler*
 secrets loses his credit. Honours, whatever they are,
 9 *perdre* *crédit* *honneur* 111
 do not make men truly great, if they have no personal
rendre *vraiment* 18 *personnel*
 merit. With time and patience we tame
 31 *mérite m* *le temps* — 98 *apprivoiser*
 wild beasts, though ever so savage.
sauvage 31 *bête f* *quelque farouches qu'elles soient.*

Every moment is dear to him who knows the value of
 106 *pl.—* *cher* 77 *connaître* *prix 4*
 time. Every man seeks tranquillity, and nobody finds it.
temps 106 *pl. chercher* — *té* 116 *trouver* 48

Envy and hatred are always united and strengthen one
envie hain f unir 143 se fortifier 114
 another in the same individual; they are only distinguish-
sujet on ne peut les distin-
 able from one another in this: the one keeps close to
*guser 114 qu'en ceci s'attacher **
 the person, the other to his situation.
 116 *état*

CHAPTER XII.

SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.

RULE 119.—*ni, ni ne*, neither.

1. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni*, and by *ne*, which is put before the first verb; example:

He knows *neither* how to read *nor* write.
Il ne sait ni lire, ni écrire.

2. If they come before two verbs in any tense of the indicative, *neither* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni ne*; examples:

I *neither* love *nor* hate them.
Je ne les aime ni ne les hais.
 I *neither* praise *nor* blame you.
Je ne vous loue ni ne vous blâme.

1. Henry the fourth was a great king: *neither* his palace
 11 B *palais*
nor his heart were shut against (any body); but they were
cœur B fermer a personne B
 particularly open to men of merit.—2. Adversity,
—lièrement ouvert mérite —té 4
neither troubles *nor* casts down the just; prosperity
*troubler abattre (ir) * juste prospérité*
neither spoils him, *nor* makes him prouder.—2. Virtue is
*aveugler 57 rendre 57 fier **
neither lost by shipwreck, *nor* changed by the alter-
ne se perd point naufrage change point vicis-
 ations of time.—2. I *neither* love *nor* hate you; you
situde temps aimer 60 haïr 57
neither please *nor* displease me.—1. You can *neither*
plaire déplaire 60 savoir (ir) A
 read *nor* write.—1. We despise those who are useful
lire écrire on mépriser 76 utile
neither to themselves, *nor* to others.
eux-mêmes 102
 H

RULE 120.—*ne jamais*, never.

✧ *Never* is expressed in French by *jamais*; *by no means* is rendered by *nullement*; both require *ne* before the verb examples:

Never speak ill of any body.

Ne parlez jamais mal de personne.

I by no means approve of your conduct.

Je n'approuve nullement votre conduite.

Never make public what has been trusted to you in secret. Shining characters are not always the most agreeable; the mild radiance of an emerald is by no means less pleasant than the glare of a ruby. Time past never returns; and a word, once uttered, never can be recalled. Scipio Africanus used to say, that he was never less at leisure, than when at leisure; nor less alone, than when alone.

rendre H 74 confier * 57 en
brillant 31 caractère m agréable
doux radiation émeraude f
agréable 39 éclat rubis passé re-
venir mot une fois prononcé rappeler
Scipion l'Africain avoir B coutume de dire B
de loisir quand il étoit de seul
quand il étoit

RULE 121.—*aucun*, *non*, *no*.

✧ 1 When the word *no* comes before a substantive; it is usually expressed by *aucun* or *aucune* for the singular, and by *aucuns* or *aucunes* for the plural, with *ne* before the verb; example:

There is *no* knowledge more useful than that of ourselves.

Il n'y a aucune connoissance plus utile que celle de nous-mêmes.

2. The word *no* is expressed by *non*, when it is used in answer to a question; example:

Do you learn geography?—*no*, Sir.

apprenez-vous la géographie?—non, monsieur

1. *No* bounds can restrain the glory of the Almighty, no dimension of time can limit his reign. There is no grief which length of time does not lessen or mollify.

limite restreindre gloire Tout-puissant
— temps limiter règne m il n'y a
chagrin * * le temps diminuer E n'adoucir F

A clear conscience needs no excuse, and fears no
 pure 31 — avoir besoin de — craindre
 accusation. 1. No inheritance can supply the want of a
 — héritage suppléer au défaut
 good education.—1. No revenge is more heroic, than
 é— vengeance héroïque
 that which torments envy by doing good.—2. Have you
 76 tourmenter envie en le bien
 seen the queen of England? No, I have not.—2. Do
 voir (ir) reine Angleterre 5 ne l'ai pas vue
 you know the king? No, madam.—1. No reverse of for-
 connoître madame revers
 tune ought to alter friendship.
 devoir A * altérer 9 amitié

RULE 122.—*ne pas*, or *non*, not.

✧ 1. The word *not* is expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxillary, and by *pas* or *point* after; example:

I do not speak. We have not spoken to him.

Je ne parle pas. Nous ne lui avons pas parlé.

2. *Ne* and *pas* go both before the verb, when it is in the present of the infinitive; example:

I will do it, in order not to displease your father.

*Je le ferai pour ne pas déplaire à votre père *.*

1. As the earth does not only produce roses and
 comme seulement 172 produire 7 —
 lilies, but likewise briars and thistles; so the world
 lis mais aussi ronces 7 chardons 7 ainsi monde m
 does not always afford us contentment and pleasure, but
 * 172 donner 57 —tement 7 plaisir 7
 sometimes afflictions and troubles.
 quelquefois — 7 peine 7

2. You must be blind not² to see, that this man
 il faut que vous 157 aveugle pour
 wants to deceive you.—To forgive our enemy before
 vouloir (ir) * tromper 57 * à avant qu'
 he is sensible of his faults, is to encourage him in his
 158 persuadé faute c'est * encourager 57
 faults; not to forgive him at all is to sin one's self.
 * lui 57 du tout c'est * pécher soi-même

* Not followed by that, is expressed by *non que* or *non pas que*, as, *je le ferai, non que j'y sois obligé; mais pour avoir la paix; I will do it, not that I am obliged to do it, but to have peace.*

RULE 123.—*ne* without *pas*, not.

The word *not* is expressed by *ne* without *pas*, when it is joined to the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and also to *savoir*, used for *to be able*, followed by an infinitive; examples:

He does not cease complaining. *Il ne cesse de se plaindre.*

I cannot speak French. *Je ne saurois parler François.*

not, *il ne cesse pas de se plaindre*, nor, *je ne saurois pas parler François.*

As antiquity cannot authorise an error, so novelty
comme ancienneté autoriser erreur ainsi nouveauté
 cannot prejudice truth. When we dare not blame
porter préjudice à on oser blâmer

a prince after his death, it is a sign that his successor
 — *après mort c'est signe m* — *seur m*
 is like him. Some people do not cease to complain
ressembler lui 57 104 personne 116 cesser de se plaindre

of fortune, though they are loaded with its favours. When
 — *f. quoiqu' 158 chargé 32 faveurs*

Darius offered to Alexander to divide Asia equally with
offrir c de partager Asie 5 également

him, he answered: The earth cannot bear two suns, nor
 48 *répondre c pouvoir souffrir soleil ni*
 Asia two kings.

RULE 124.—*Distinction of pas and point.*

1. *Point* denies absolutely and signifies not at all; *pas* denies sometimes but in part; thus this sentence, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables*, signifies that none of the accused are guilty; and this, *tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables*, signifies only that they are not all guilty.

2. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of a thing, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it; thus, in this sentence, *n'avez-vous point vu mon frère?* I doubt if you have seen him or not; and in this, *n'avez-vous pas vu mon frère?* I am persuaded you have seen him.

Though this distinction be exact, and conformable to the practice of the best authors, yet it is not always observed; and there are many cases, in which *pas* and *point* can be almost indifferently used.

RULE 125.—*que ne*, than.

☞ When the word *than* comes before a verb in any tense of the indicative mood, it is usually expressed by *que*, and by *ne*, which is put before the verb; example:

He is younger *than* I thought.

Il est plus jeune que je ne croyois.

not, *il est plus jeune que je croyois.*

Courage is oftener allied to vice, *than* cowardice is to

— *plus souvent allier m lâcheté* 54

virtue. We despise those who speak otherwise *than* they

98 *mépriser* 76 *autrement*

think. Ireland is more powerful at present, *than* were

penser Irlande 5 f *puissant à* 54 B

the three kingdoms at the death of queen Elizabeth. A

royaume mort reine —

traveller often relates things otherwise *than* they are.

voyageur 172 *rapporter*

RULE 126.—*ne* after *crainare*, &c.

✧ The particle *ne* is used in French after the verbs *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *prendre garde*, and *empêcher*, when they are affirmatively used; but not when negatively; examples:

I fear he will do it.

Je crains qu'il ne le fasse.

I do not fear he will do it.

Je ne crains pas qu'il le fasse

From these examples you may observe, that there is always a negation in the sentence where these verbs are used *.

I have not heard of my son for these six months;

*entendu parler depuis * mois*

I fear lest some misfortune have befallen him. I fear my

que malheur être F arriver lui 57

father will come; I do not fear he will come. I will hinder

* *venir F* * *empêcher*

him from punishing you; I will not hinder him from punish-

*qu'il * punir F* 57 *qu'il **

ing you, because you deserve it.

57 *parce que mériter le* 57

RULE 127.—*ne* after *à moins que*.

✧ The particle *ne* is used in French after the conjunctions *à moins que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *que* for *unless*, and *que* for *before*; though there is no negation in English; example:

Unless you punish him, he will not study *.

A moins que vous ne le punissiez, il n'étudiera pas.

* These verbs and conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood.

No man was ever (cast down) by the injuries of fortune
personne c abattre (ir) revers — f
 unless he had before suffered himself to be deceived by
*à moins qu'il se fût auparavant laissé * * tromper*
 her favours. I will not go into the country unless
fauteur aller (ir) à campagne f à moins
 you go with me. Go home, for fear my
que venir F 49 aller H à la maison de crainte que
 father comes and finds you here. A judge ought to
*ne trouver 57 ici juge devoir A **
 examine his own heart, lest passion prevent justice.
examiner cœur de peur que — 9 empêcher — f
 I will not forgive you, unless you beg pardon. I will
pardonner 57 que demander B —
 not (set off) before my cousin is come.
partir que — F venir

RULE 128.—*ne que*, but. only.

☞ When the words *but* or *only* come after a verb, and mean no more, nothing else, or nobody else than, they are usually expressed by *ne* before it and by *que* after it; examples:

I have *but* few friends. *Je n'ai que peu d'amis.*
 He is *but* twelve years old *. *Il n'a que douze ans.*

Knowledge without humility, produces nothing but pride,
*science 9 4 —té produire * orgueil*
 vanity, and presumption. We confess small failings, only to
—té présomption avouer 8 défaut pour
 persuade others that we have no great ones. I am *but*
—der aux autres 18 grand en 57 avoir
 twenty years old. God requires nothing of us *but* what is for
*ans * demander * * 57 74*
 our advantage. Friendship (is to be purchased) *only* by
avantage amitié 9 peut s'acheter par
 friendship.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES upon the NEGATIONS.

There is no reproof more mild, no exhortation more
il y a 121 réproche m doux 121 —

* However, *qui* is used when *but* is placed between the nominative and the verb. Example: *il n'y a personne qui ne craigne la mort*, there is nobody but fears death.

effectual, than good example. Afflict nobody, never
efficace *exemple m* *affliger* H 116 120
 blame without reason, never reprove with passion, and
blâmer 120 *réprimander*
 be always ready to pardon injuries. Two things cannot
prêt à pardonner *injure* 9 *chose* *pouvoir* (ir)
 be more contradictory than truth and falsehood; yet, per-
—toirc *vérité* *fausseté* *peut-*
 haps, none are so mixed and united. Charity never looks
être 117 *mêler ni si unir* *—té* 120 *regarder*
 on others with contempt.
 * *mépris.*

No strength of genius, no vivacity of wit, can excuse
 121 *force f* *génie* 121 *—té* *esprit* *excuser*
 immorality in authors. There would be neither navigation
—té *auteur* *il n'y auroit* 119 *—*
 nor agriculture, without the industry of men. What is
— *sans* *—trie* 74 *se*
 done in anger, can neither be done well, nor
fait dans colère ne pouvoir (ir) 119 *fait* 172
 be approved by any body. The waves of the channel are
approuver de personne *vague f* *Manche f*
 not more agitated by the winds of the east or the west,
 122 *agité* *vent* * *est* * *uest,*
 than my heart was when I heard of that sorrowful
 125 *cœur* 54 c *apprendre* (ir) c * *fâcheux*
 accident.

Unless magistrates be on their guard, they will
à moins que 127 *—trat* F *garde pl.*
 (be made) instruments of the revenge of wicked men.
devenir *—* *vengeance* *méchans* *
 There is no object more pleasing than the sight of a man
il y a 121 *objet* *agréable* *vue f*
 whom you have obliged.
 79 *obliger.*

CHAPTER XIII.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE 129—Verbs which govern the Genitive.

☞ The verbs which govern the genitive in French are
 1. the following, *abuser*, *avoir besoin*, *avoir pitié*, *hériter*,
jouir, *manquer*, *médire*, *rougir*, and *user*, whatever case they
 govern in English; examples:

He traduces every body. I enjoy good health.

Il médit de tout le monde. Je jouis d'une bonne santé.
not, *il médit tout le monde ; not, je jouis une bonne santé.*

2. Most of the reflected verbs; examples:

He repents his faults; she distrusts every body.

Il se repent de ses fautes; elle se défie de tout le monde.

3. Most of the verbs followed by the prepositions *of, from, with, or by*; examples:

I am loaded *with* spoils. He is loved *by* his master.

Je suis chargé de butin. Il est aimé de son maître.

not, *je suis chargé avec butin, nor, il est aimé par son maître.*

2. The impious mock at virtue, and ridicule

—*pie pl. se moquer*

tourner en ridicule

religion.—2. Do not laugh at others' misfortunes, instead

— *se moquer*

102

malheur

au lieu

of pitying them.—1. You abuse the favours of for-

de avoir pitié 139 en 57

abuser

faveur

tune, and you do not use your victory with moderation.—

— *user*

victoire

modération.—

1. Death pities nobody, neither rich nor poor.—1. Never

mort avoir pitié 116

119

du riche

pauvre

120

traduce (any body.)

médire à personne.

3. Covetous men are tormented with the desire of increas-

*avare **

tourmenter

désir

augmen-

ing what they have, and the fear of losing it.—1

zer 139 74

21

crainte f perdre le 57

Nature wants few things.—3. She is contented with

— *avoir besoin 18*

se contenter

little.—1. It is grievous to want money in a foreign

peu

fâcheux

de manquer argent

étranger

country.

31 *pays.*

RULE 130.—Verbs which govern the Dative.

The following verbs, *consentir, contrevenir, contribuer, déplaire, désobéir, nuire, obéir, obvier, pardonner, parvenir, penser, plaire, remédier, ressembler, résister, songer, subvenir, succéder, and survivre*, govern the dative in French, whatever case they govern in English; examples:

He obeys his master. You please every body.

Il obéit à son maître. Vous plaisez à tout le monde.

not, *il obéit son maître, nor, vous plaisez tout le monde.*

Flattery can hurt nobody, but him whom it pleases. If

—*rie*

nuire

*

128

77

plaire

we do not *forgive* others, we must not expect that God
pardonner 102 *il ne faut pas espérer* Dieu
 will forgive us. Remember, O my son, the counsel
 * 159 57 *se souvenir* H 129 *conseil* 83
 I give thee, it will profit thee much: *obey* the law of
donner 57 *profiter* 57 *beaucoup obeir* H *loi*
 God. Obey the king and all the subordinate magistrates,
 H — *donné* 31 — *tratt*
resist your passions, *forgive* your enemies, *hurt* nobody,
résister H — H *ennemi nuire* H 116
 and never *yield* to the allurements of pleasure. He that
 120 *céder* H *atttrait* 4 77
resists his evil inclinations, deserves greater praises than
résister mauvais — *mériter* 8 *éloge* m
 he who conquers kingdoms, and cannot command his
 77 *conquérir (ir)* 7 — *der à*
 passions.

RULE 131.—*Verbs which govern the Accusative.*

All the verbs which can be turned by the passive voice govern the accusative in French, whatever case they govern in English; example:

I accept of your offer. *J'accepte votre offre.*
 God accepts of our endeavours after holiness
accepter effort pour arriver à 4 *sainteté*
 provided they be sincere. He that was never acquainted
pourvu qu' 158 77 * 120 *connoître c*
 with adversity, says Seneca, knows the world but on
 * 9 — *té* *Sénèque connoître monde* 128 *d'*
 one side. If you seek for happiness (any where) but in
*côté chercher * bonheur ailleurs que en*
 God, you are sure to be disappointed. Henry the Fourth
 — *de tromper* 11
 looked upon the good education of youth as a thing
*regarder ** *é—* *jeunesse comme chose f*
 (upon which) depends the felicity of kingdoms and peo-
d'où dépendre bonheur 4 *peu-*
 ple.
 ple pl.

RULE 132.—*Accusative and Genitive.*

The following verbs, *absoudre, accabler, accuser, avertir, bannir, blâmer, chasser, combler, corriger, débusquer, dégoûter, délivrer, détourner, dissuader, exclure, expulser, informer, louer, menacer, priver, remplir, soupçonner*, and a few others govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing; example:

To expel the impious from society*.

Chasser les impies de la société.

It is the part of a fool to accuse another of a fault
c'est fait . fou d'accuser un autre faute f
 of which he is himself guilty. Our infirmities often

80 61 *coupable* —*té* 172
 remind us of mortality, sickness warns us of
faire ressouvenir 57 —*té* *maladie avertir* 57

death, adversity ought to admonish us of our duties, and
 —*té* *devoir* A* *avertir* 57 *devoir*

make us think of religion. To load an enemy with in-
faire *penser* 130 — * *charger ennemi d'* in-

juries; to exclude a liar from society; to free one's country
jure * *exclure menteur* *délivrer son pays*

from tyranny.

—*nie*

RULE 133.—*Accusative and Dative*

The following verbs, *accorder, adresser, annoncer, appor-
 ter, attribuer, avouer, communiquer, confesser, confier, conseil-
 ler, déclarer, dédier, demander, devoir, dire, donner, écrire,
 enseigner, envoyer, épargner, expliquer, ôter, pardonner, pré-
 dire, préférer, prendre, présenter, prêter, procurer, promettre,
 raconter, rapporter, refuser, rendre, renvoyer, répéter, repro-
 cher, répondre, révéler, vendre, and a few others govern in
 French the dative of the person, and the accusative of the
 thing, whatever case they govern in English; example:*

Take that sword from your son.

Otez cette épée à votre fils.

We must give children an honest liberty, and forgive
il faut enfant honnête —té pardonner
 them the faults which they commit through ignorance

52 *faute* *commettre (ir) par* —
 or levity. Ask nothing of your friend, but what is

légèreté demander * *ami* 128 74
 right. Prefer virtue to riches. If we were allowed

juste préférer richesses s'il nous étoit permis
 to take away from others, whatever we should think

de prendre * 102 107 *juger*
 proper, the society of men would be soon overturned.

à propos *bientôt renverser*

* When those verbs govern one noun only, it is usually put in the accusative, whether it have reference to a person or to a thing.

When I see birds build their nests with (so much) art
oiseau bâtir nid tant 18 —
 and skill, I ask what master has taught them
adresse demander maître enseigner c 52
 mathematics and architecture? Justice gives (every body)
mathématique — — f donner chacun
 his own. Intemperate youth transmits a wasted
le sien une — pérée 31 jeunesse transmettre épuisé
 body to (old age.)
 31 corps vieillesse

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GOVERNMENT of VERBS.

It is the duty of a christian to please God, to hurt
c'est devoir chrétien de plaire 130 nuire
 nobody, and to do good even to his enemies. An honest
 116 *bien 7 même ennemi honnête*
 man ought to endeavour to satisfy his creditors. We
*devoir A * tâcher de satisfaire 131 créanciers*
 ought to use diligence, and not to abuse time,
*devoir A * user 129 — 122 * — ser 129 temps*
 because the life we enjoy is short. Fortune often
parce que 80 jouir 129 court — f 172
 snatches away wealth from the rich; but she cannot
*ôter 133 * richesses riche mais*
 take away probity from the virtuous.
*ôter 133 * probité vertueux*

Solomon asked wisdom of God; God said unto
Sa — demander c 133 Dieu dire c
 him: Because thou hast asked this thing of me, and
lui 57 parce que demander me 57
 hast not asked long life, nor riches, nor the life of
que une longue richesses 7
 thy enemies, I have given thee a wise and understanding
ennemi donner 57 31 intelligent
 heart, also riches and honour. We cannot easily
cœur et richesses 7 honneur aisément 172
 withstand the allurements of pleasure.
résister 130 attrait plaisir 4

The country is encompassed on all sides with craggy
pays environner de côté de escarpé 31
 rocks, so that it needs few troops to defend
rocher si bien qu'on a besoin 129 peu 18 pour
 it; such is the fruitfulness of the soil, that it
le 57 telle fertilité terrain

is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty
se nourrir 129 *propre richesse* *telle* *quantité*
of fountains and woods, that it is watered with abun-
fontaine *bois* *arroser* 129 *un grand*
dance of rivulets, and affords the diversions of hunting. I
nombre *ruisseau* *procurer* *plaisir* *chasse*
will abuse your patience no longer. Did you think of
abuser 129 — *davantage* 172 *penser* B 130
my business? Has he perceived your trick? Resist the
affaire *s'apercevoir* 129 *tour résister* H 130
wicked. He will not obey his master.
méchans *obéir* 130

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood comprehends the *present*, the *gerund*, and the *participle*. As these three tenses demand particular attention, they will be explained separately.

OF THE PRESENT.

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Preposition.*

1. A verb in the present of the infinitive has no preposition before it, when it comes after any of the following, *aimer mieux*, *aller*, *croire*, *daigner*, *déclarer*, *devoir*, *entendre*, *envoyer*, *espérer*, *faire*, *falloir*, *laisser*, *nier*, *oser*, *paraître*, *prétendre*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, *sembler*, *souhaiter*, *soutenir*, *valoir mieux*, *voir* and *vouloir*; examples;

Deign to answer me. You ought to write to him.
daignez me répondre *vous devriez lui écrire*

2. A verb is also put in the present of the infinitive without any preposition, when it is the subject or the nominative case of another verb; example:

To speak too much is dangerous. To walk is wholesome.
trop parler *est dangereux* *se promener est salubre*

1. Should you be as rich as Cræsus, if you do not
quand E 37 *Crésus* 123
know how to put bounds to your desires, you will al-
savoir * * *mettre borne* 7 *désir*
ways be poor.—2. To keep up acquaintance with vicious
172 *vivre familièrement* *vicieux*
people, is to authorise vice. 1. A wise man desires
* *c'est* * *autoriser* m *le sage* * *désirer*

nothing, but what he can get justly, use with
 * 128 74 *gagner avec justice consommer avec*
 sobriety, and distribute cheerfully. —2. To mourn without
sobriété —buer avec joie pleurer sans
 measure, is folly, not to mourn at all is insensibility. —1.
mesure c'est folie 122 du tout c'est —té
 Men ought to shun vice and stick to virtue. Those who
*on devoir A éviter pratiquer * 77*
 pretend to be learned, are often very ignorant. I will go
prétendre
 and see him to-morrow, If I have time.
 * *le 57 demain le temps*

RULE 135.—*Infinitive with de* *.

✚ We place the preposition *de* before a verb in the infinitive mood:

1. After a substantive which so governs a verb as to be inseparably connected; examples:

It is time to set out. *Il est temps de partir.*

You have no cause to be angry with me.

vous n'avez pas sujet d'être fâché contre moi.

You have plenty of time to consider that question. Read-

tout le examiner — lec-
 ing is a method of conferring with men, who, in every
ture 9 manière conférer avec 4 106

age, have been the most distinguished for their learning
siècle pl se sont —gués par science

of (becoming acquainted with) the result of their mature
connaître résultat mûre

reflections, and of contemplating at leisure the finished pro-
réflexions —pler à loisir meilleur

ductions of good authors. It is folly to think of escaping
auteur 170 folie penser à échapper

censure, and a weakness to (be affected) (by it.) He
*à 4 * foiblesse s'affecter en 58*

had not the courage to resist. I discover no reason to post-
c — résister découvrir 121 raison dis-

pose my journey.
ferer voyage

2. The English preposition *for* with a gerund after a substantive is generally expressed by *de* with the infinitive: example:

* We have given more extent to this rule and the following, as it much puzzles foreigners to know when they are to employ *à* or *de* before an infinitive.

I make you my compliments for having succeeded ;

Je vous fais mon compliment d'avoir réussi ;

I feel a great obligation to you for having spoken in my
avoir — 47 en

behalf. Receive my thanks for having (exerted yourself so
faveur remerciement prendre tant de

much) for the success of my affair.

peine succès affaire f

3. After an adjective, whenever by inverting the sentence, the infinitive may serve as a nominative to this expression, *is to be*, (*c'est être*,) followed by the adjective, and likewise after *capable*, *incapable*, *digne*, *indigne* ; examples :

You are very clever to have succeeded so well ;

Vous êtes très-adroit d'avoir si bien réussi.

We may say: to have succeeded so well *is to be* very clever ;
avoir si bien réussi, c'est être très-adroit.

He is worthy of being preferred for that employment.

Il est digne d'être préféré pour cet emploi

Indeed, we are too good to listen to such nonsense.
en vérité trop écouter * 8 pareil sottise f pl.

That man is very curious, to ask (so many) questions. You
bien faire tant 18 —

are very amiable in having come to pay us a visit. She is
aimable être venir * rendre 57 * —le

too complaisant, in obliging a man who deserves it so little.
— —ger mériter 50 si peu

He is not able to go so far.

capable si loin

4. After any adjective preceded by the impersonal verbs *il est*, it is, *il semble*, it seems, *il paroît*, it appears, and after several impersonal verbs which could be expressed by *il est* with the adjectives derived from them, as *il convient*, *il suffit*, *il importe*, for, *il est convenable*, *suffisant*, *important* ; examples :

It is dangerous to trust every body.

Il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.

It is enough to speak to him.

Il suffit de lui parler.

It is impossible to please every body. It (is impor-
— à tout le monde —

tant) to be careful when one is in a public situation. It
ter soigneux 98 —31 —

ought to (be enough) for you not to have been punished ;
devoir A * suffire * 57

and it is unjust to ask a reward for an action which
injuste demander récompense —

deserved punishment. It would be advantageous for a
mériter B *punition* *avantageux*
 nation to be governed by men entirely free from pas-
gouverner 7 *entièrement exempt*
 sions; but it appears impossible to find such perfect
 — *trouver* 7 *si parfait* 31
 beings on the earth.
êtres sur

5. After most of the reflected verbs; examples:

I will abstain from doing it. He repents of having said it.
Je m'abstiendrai de le faire *il se repent de l'avoir dit*

6. After the following verbs, *accuser, affecter, avertir, blâ-
 mer, cesser, commander, conjurer, conseiller, craindre, détourner,
 défendre, différer, dire, dispenser, dissuader, écrire, empêcher,
 enjoindre, entreprendre, essayer, feindre, finir, menacer, mérit-
 er, négliger, offrir, omettre, ordonner, oublier, parler, per-
 mettre, persuader, plaindre, presser, prescrire, prier, promet-
 tre, proposer, refuser, remercier, résoudre, sommer, soupçonner,
 and supplier*; example:

I advise you to stay here.
Je vous conseille de rester ici.

6. The law of nature forbids us to do injustice to one
défendre * *se faire tort* pl.
 another.—6. God commands us to love our enemies, and
 114 *commander* 57 *aimer* *ennemi*
 to do them good.—6. They deserve to be encouraged, who
faire leur 57 *bien* 7 *78 mériter*
 undertake to serve the public.—6. Never promise to do
entreprendre *servir* 120 *promettre*
 a thing, when it is not in your 1. power to do it.—5. I pro-
chose quand *pouvoir* *se pro-*
 pose to go and see your mother to-night
poser * *voir* *ce soir*

RULE 136.—*Infinitive with à.*

✚ We place the preposition *à* before a verb in the infinitive mood.

1. After a substantive when to express something to be done; examples:

I have no time to lose.
Je n'ai point de temps à perdre.

I know of a house to be sold.
Je connois une maison à vendre.

I have found a fine garden to let. Is your house to
trouver *louer* 92

sell or to let? I have (so much) work to do that I
vendre tant 18 *ouvrage faire*
 have not a moment to lose. You know my dispositions to
 — *perdre connoître*
 oblige my friends. I think I perceive in him a kind of
 — *ger ami croire ** *apercevoir en* 49 *sorte f*
 repugnancy to learn mathematics.
ré— —ce apprendre (ir) mathématiques pl.

2. After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by *in* with the gerund; example:

I have great pleasure to see you (*in seeing you*).

J'ai beaucoup de plaisir à vous voir (en vous voyant).

You know his courage *in facing* dangers. Your son
connoître — affronter —
 spends all his time *in laughing and playing*. A true christian
passer rire jouer vrai chrétien
 places all his happiness *in relieving* the unfortunate.
mettre (ir) soulager malheureux pl.
 The true hero experiences an infinite satisfaction *in sacrificing*
héros éprouver —ni 31 — —fier
 himself for his country. There is more glory *in dying* like
se 57 pays 169 18 mourir comme
 Nelson than *in living* in unmerited honours.
vivre au sein des honneurs qu'on n'a pas mérités

3. After any adjectives, except in the two cases mentioned in the preceding rule, and also when the verb expresses a cause, a motive; examples:

I am ready to go out.

Je suis prêt à partir.

This fruit is good to eat.

Ce fruit est bon à manger.

But we ought to say: I am glad to see you, *je suis aise de vous voir*, as the sentence means: I am glad *because* I see you.

Is French easy to learn? Is that question difficult to
le 92 facile apprendre —92 difficile
 resolve? Let a prince be slow to punish and quick to
résoudre lent punir prompt
 reward. Charity is ready to sacrifice her own interests to
récompenser —té prêt —fier propre intérêt
 those of others. One thing useful to acquire is to know
76 102 utile acquérir c'est de savoir
 how to live contented with the situation (in which) we have
 * * *content de — où 99*
 been placed by Divine Providence.

4. After the verbs, *accoutumer, admettre, aider, aimer, apprendre, apprêter, astreindre, autoriser, borner, chercher, commencer, condamner, consister, contribuer, dépenser, destiner, disposer, donner, employer, encourager, engager, enhardir, enseigner, exercer, exciter, exhorter, habituer, hésiter, inviter, montrer, parvenir, persister, porter, préparer, pousser, réduire, renoncer, réussir, servir, songer, soumettre, tendre, viser*, and some others mentioned in the list of verbs at the end of the grammar, which govern the next verb in the infinitive with *à*; examples:

I learn to dance.

J'apprends à danser

He likes to play at cards.

il aime à jouer aux cartes

True wisdom, consists in knowing one's duty exactly,
vrai sagesse —ter connoître son devoir exactement.
 true eloquence in speaking of it clearly and true piety in
é— en 57 clairement piété
 doing what we know to be good. Love to help the unfortu-
faire 74 on savoir (ir) bien H soulager malheu-
 nate, and to comfort the afflicted. A good education teaches
reux pl consoler affligé pl apprendre
 us to behave ² well ¹ to every body. The latter part of
^{* se conduire envers tout le monde dernier partie}
 a wise man's life is (taken up) in curing the false opinions
 31 17 employer se défaire des faux —
 and prejudices which he had contracted in the former.
 10 préjugé B —ter premier

RULE 137.—Infinitive with *de* or *à* *.

1. *Manquer* governs the infinitive with *à* when it is affirmatively used, and with *de* when negatively; examples:

The unfortunate never fail to complain.

les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre

I have failed to do what I had promised you.

J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avois promis

2. *Tâcher* governs the infinitive with *de* when it means to endeavour; and with *à* when it means to aim at; examples:

I will endeavour to satisfy you.

Je tâcherai de vous satisfaire

He aims at doing me a prejudice.

Il tâche à me porter préjudice

* The following, *commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, and obliger*, govern the infinitive with *de*, or *à*, according as it sounds best.

3. *Tarder* governs the infinitive with *à* when it signifies to delay, and with *de* when it is used impersonally to signify to long; examples:

He is long before he comes. I long to see him.
Il tarde bien à venir il me tarde de le voir

4. *Venir* governs the infinitive mood without a preposition, when it signifies to come; as, *venez me voir*, come and see me; with *de*, when it signifies a thing just done; as, *il vient de sortir*, he is just gone out; and with *à*, when it signifies to happen; as, *s'il vient à pleuvoir*, you will be wet.

1. I will not fail to punish you, if you neglect to do your exercise.—2. You ought to endeavour to learn your lessons better. That man aims at nothing but ruining those who trust to him.—3. I long to see your mother; she delays long in coming.—4. Come and see us to-morrow. Is your father at home?—4. No, he is just (gone out.) As religion obliges us to love princes, so princes are obliged to protect us.

manquer punir 57 manquer
thème devoir E 134 apprendre
*leçon mieux 172 * 128 ruiner 76*
se fier 49 il me tarde voir
*tarder long-temps à venir venir * 57*
92 père chez lui venir sortir
f obliger 57 à aimer ainsi de
protéger

RULE 138.—Infinitive with *pour*.

✎ We use the preposition *pour* before the present of the infinitive, when we want to express the end, the design, or the cause for which a thing is done; and, in general, every time that the preposition *to* can be changed into *in order to* without altering the sense; example:

I am come to see you.

Je suis venu pour vous voir.

I will do every thing to oblige you*.

Je ferai tout pour vous obliger.

He who tells a lie, (is not sensible) how great a task he undertakes; for he may be forced to invent twenty more to maintain that one. It is necessary to

*77 faire (ir) mensonge m ne savoir (ir) pas quelle **
** tâche f entreprendre (ir) pouvoir (ir) forcer d'en*
inventer autres soutenir le premier 135

* *Pour* is also used after the words *assez*, *trop*, *suffisamment*, and the verb *suffire*.

know the human heart, to judge well of others. God has
connoître 31 juger 172 des autres
 not given us a heart to hate one another. He who has a
57 nous haïr 114 pl 77 une
 good estate, and makes use of it to promote the glory of
belle fortune f. qui usage en 57 procurer
 God, and to help those who are in need, is beloved by
soulager 77 dans le besoin aimer de
 every body. Palamedes invented the game of chess, to
tout le monde — 14 inventer c jeu échecs
 serve for diversion to his soldiers, and to teach them
servir d'amusement soldats apprendre 52
 the stratagems of war.
stratagème 4 guerre

RULE 139.—*Infinitive instead of the gerund.*

✚ We never put a gerund in French after any other prepo-
 sition than *en*. Thus we put the present of the infinitive after
 the prepositions *de, à, pour, après, sans, par*, and every other.

You cannot go there, *without* disobeying your father.
Vous ne pouvez y aller, sans désobéir à votre père.

I must begin *by* saying my lessons.
Il faut que je commence par réciter mes leçons.

After *having* terminated some affairs at home, I shall
—ner 104 chez moi

begin *by* paying some visits; and after *having* dined
commencer rendre 104 —te

with a friend of mine, I will spend the evening with you,
70 passer soirée

Nobody can be happy, *without* practising virtue. We
116 pratiquer

should never undertake (any thing) before *having* con-
devoir E 120 entreprendre rien avant de

sulted the will of God, and implored his divine assistance.
—ter volonté —rer 31 —

If Titus passed one day *without* doing good to (any body)
passer B bien 7 quelqu'un

he used to say, I have lost that day.

avoir B coutume 135 perdre journée

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the INFINI-
 TIVE with *de, à, pour, sans* &c.

Youth cannot forbear gaming. All men are liable
les jeunes gens 134 s'empêcher 135 jouer sujet

to mistake. Men are born to labour as birds
 132 *se tromper* naître (ir) 138 *travailler* oiseau
 to fly. There are persons whom we hate, others whom
 138 *voler* Il y a personne 7 que haïr d'autres
 we love, without knowing why; the one is injustice, the
 aimer 139 *savoir* une — f
 other a weakness. The desire of deserving the praises which
 faiblesse désir 135 *mériter* louange
 are given us strengthens our virtue. Giddy minds begin
 98 *donner* 57 *fortifier* légers 31 *esprits*
 many things, without ever finishing any.
plusieurs 139 *en finir* aucune

There are two sorts of curiosity; the one of interest,
 il y a sorte f 16 —tés intérêt
 which incites us to desire to learn what can be useful
 porter 136 *désirer* d'apprendre 74 utile
 to us; the other of pride, which proceeds from the desire
 57 orgueil venir désir 139
 of knowing what others are ignorant of. The greatest
 savoir 74 * ignorant *
 wisdom of a man consists in knowing his own follies, and in
 sagesse —ter 136 *connoître* folie
 taking measures to (make amends) for them.
prendre 7 *mesure* 138 *réparer* * les 57

Life is given us to glorify God, and to save our souls
 138 —fier 138 *sauver* âme
 by good actions. In general, young men are more fond
 8 — les jeunes gens * 172 *aimer*
 of hearing strange things, than ready to believe
 136 *entendre* étrange 31 7 qu'ils ne sont prompts 136 *croire*
 them. Death is an eternal decree, to which all men ought
 57 éternel 31 *décret* 81 *devoir* A
 to submit. Men often think of death when it is too
 134 *se soumettre* 172 *penser* 130 trop
 late; and begin to study how to live, when they
 tard commencer 136 *apprendre* * 136 *vivre* quand
 should learn how to die.
devoir E *apprendre* * 136 *mourir*

People are often afraid of seeing themselves such as
 on * 172 *craindre* 137 *voir* se 57 tel qu'
 they are, because they are not what they should be. No-
 on parce qu'on 74 on *devoir* E
 body (is able) to write well, who has not learnt to
 116 *pouvoir* 134 *écrire* 172 s'il *apprendre* 136
 think well, to arrange his thoughts methodically, and to
 penser 136 —ger idée avec méthode 136
 express them with propriety. To be a christian, is to
exprimer 57 —été 134 * chrétien c'est *

follow the precepts delivered by Jesus Christ, to love what
*suivre précepte donné Jésus — * aimer 74*
 he loved, and to despise what he despised.

B

* mépriser 74

B

OF THE GERUND.

RULE 140.—Gerund indeclinable.

✧ When a word ending in *ing* precedes the substantive in English, it goes after it in French, and is always declinable like an adjective ; examples :

A convincing proof. Charming girls.
une preuve convainquante. des filles charmantes.

2. When a word ending in *ing* goes after the substantive in English, it is a gerund, and indeclinable in French ; example :

A proof convincing every body.
une preuve convainquant tout le monde—not *convainquante*.

This distinction is an invariable rule by which one may easily know when a gerund is declinable or indeclinable. It qualifies in the first case as an adjective ; and in the second it denotes an action as a verb.

1. The loadstone has *surprising* effects.—1. Your sister
aimant surprenant effet 7
 is a *charming* girl.—2. The soldiers of Alexander, *forgetting*
charmant oublier
 their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold
*regarder B * de la Perse 31* or
 as their plunder.—1. *Lowing* oxen, and *bleating* sheep,
butin mugissant bœufs bêlant brebis pl f
 came in flocks ; they could not find [stables enough to
B foule on B trouver étable 18 138
 shelter them.
mettre à couvert 57

2. The Asiatics, *remembering* the dignity of Berenice,
—tique se ressouvenir 129
 and *pitying* her hard fortune, sent her aid. —1.
avoir pitié 129 mauvais — envoyer c 52 secours 7

As on the margin of a brook a zephyr, with a *cooling*
comme bord ruisseau rafraîchissant
 breeze, revives the *languishing* flocks, which the *burning*
haleine f ranimer languissant troupeau brûlant

heat of the summer consumes, so this speech allayed
chaleur été —mer ainsi discours appaiser B
 the Goddess's despair.
déesse 17 désespoir

RULE 141.—*Indicative used instead of the Gerund.*

When an English gerund has reference to a substantive or a pronoun which is not in the nominative case, it must be rendered in French by the present or the imperfect of the indicative mood, with the relative pronoun *qui* before it ; example:

I have seen my brother *playing* in the garden.
J'ai vu mon frère qui jouoit dans le jardin,
 not, *j'ai vu mon frère jouant.*

Clouds and fogs (are formed) from the vapours arising
nuage brouillard se former vapeur s'élever A
 from the earth. Variety of colours depends on the position
—été 4 couleur dépendre de —

and order of the objects *diversifying* the light in the reflection
ordre objet diversifier A lumière réflexion
 of their rays. Alexander, at the point of death, asked his
rayon sur — mourir 133

friends *standing* about him-if they thought they could
se tenir B auprès de croire (ir) B 83 C
 find a king like him. Men act most frequently from motives
comme 49 agir souvent par motif ?
 arising from present circumstances.
venir A 31 circonstance

RULE 142.—*by expressed by en.*

The preposition *by*, which comes in English before a gerund, is most commonly expressed in French by *en* with the gerund ; example :

We have obtained peace *by making* great sacrifices.
Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices.
 not, *par faisant de grands sacrifices.*

By (taking revenge), a man is but equal with his enemy,
se venger 128 égal à ennemi
by passing it over, he is his superior. You may easily
*pardonner lui * lui * supérieur*
 get praise, *by complying* (with the) wishes of the
obtenir louanges ? vous conformer aux désir
 people you converse with, and *by* preferring others to
personne 83 —ser 174 préférer
 yourself. If you have rashly engaged to do a
imprudemment s'engager à
 thing which ought not to be done, do not make
*devoir A se faire * rendre H le*

bad worse by persisting to do it. The grace of
mal plus grand —ter 136 la 57
 God works upon us, by suggesting good thoughts and keeping
opérer en suggérer 8 pensée 177 éloigner
 off bad ones
 * *les mauvaises* *

OF THE PARTICIPLE.

RULE 143.—*Cases in which the Participle is declinable.*

1. A participle is always declinable in French as an adjective, when it comes after a substantive which it qualifies; examples :

A book well written. A letter well written.
Un livre bien écrit. Une lettre bien écrite.

2. When it comes after any tense of the verb *être*, *paraître*, or *sembler*; examples :

My brother is esteemed. My sister is esteemed.
Mon frère est estimé. Ma sœur est estimée.

He appears afflicted. She seems afflicted.
Il paraît affligé. Elle semble affligée.

3. In the compound tenses of reflected verbs, when the second pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, are in the accusative, which is always the case when the reflected verb is not followed by another accusative; so we must say :

She has wounded herself, *elle s'est blessée* ;
 because *se* is in the accusative: but we should say
 She has wounded her foot; *elle s'est blessé le pied* ;
 because *se* is in the dative, and stands for *à elle-même*.

4. When it comes after the verb *avoir*, if the noun or pronoun antecedent answer to the question *whom* or *what*, and could be put immediately after the participle, in giving the sentence another turn; examples :

The woman I have seen is very handsome.
La femme que j'ai vue est très-belle.

The rules which I have learnt are easy.
Les règles que j'ai apprises sont faciles.

The participle *vue* agrees with *femme*, and *apprises* with *règles*; because if you ask me, whom have I seen? my answer will be a handsome woman; what I have learnt?—easy rules.

2. He is arrived from France. She is arrived from Spain.
arriver Espagne

—1. A noble, but confused thought, is a diamond covered
 31 *confus* *pensée* *diamant couvrir*
 with dust.—1. Alms given without ostentation acquire
de poussière aumône f — *acquérir (ir)*
 new merit.—2. Letters and writing have been invented to
un mérite m f *écriture* *inventer* 138
 speak to the eye.—2. The wicked are always tormented by
pl. *méchans* *tourmenter*
 their own conscience.—2. Virtuous people are esteemed, and
 * — *vertueux personne f* *estimer*
 the impious despised.—3. My sisters (have been much amused)
impie m sont mépriser 172 *s'amuser*
 in your company. —3. The accounts (have not been
dans — *gnie* *compte m* *se*
 found) right.—3. Both armies have fought with the greatest
trouver juste *les deux armée se battre (ir)*
 intrepidity.—4. The letter which I have received is long.—4.
intrépidité *lettre f* *recevoir* —
 The faults he has committed are pardonable.—4. The house
faute f 83 *commettre (ir)* *pardonnable*
 which I have bought is new.—4. The horses which you have
acheter neuf
 sold me are very good.—4. The women whom I have
vendre 57
 seen are young and handsome.

RULE 144.—Cases in which the Participle is indeclinable.

➤ 1. The participle is indeclinable when the verb *avoir* is not preceded by any noun or pronoun in the accusative; example:

I have seen a handsome woman. I have learnt a rule
J'ai vu une belle femme. *J'ai appris une règle*
 not, *j'ai vue une belle femme*; nor, *j'ai apprise une règle*

2. The participle is always indeclinable in French, when it is followed by a verb which governs the noun antecedent this is the case when it cannot be put immediately after the participle, as in this example:

The house which I have advised you to buy is new.

La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter est neuve.

We cannot say *conseiller une maison*, consequently the word *maison* is governed by *acheter*, and the participle not having reference to it is indeclinable.

These two rules, if well understood, will remove one of the greatest difficulties of the French language.

1. Happy the princes, who have always used their
heureux *employer*
 power for the good of their people. Demetrius being in-
pouvoir *bien* *peuple pl.* * *in-*

formed that the Athenians had *overthrown* his statues; they
former B *détruire* *statue*
 have not, replied he, *overthrown* the valour which has
répliqua-t-il *valeur*
 caused them (to be erected) (to me). Your sisters have
fait 57 *ériger* *me* 57.
 made great progress in French. We have *dined* to-day
faire 8 *progrès dans le* *dîner*
 sooner than usual. I have *written* a letter to my father.
plus tôt *à l'ordinaire* *écrire*
 We have *played* much to-day.
jouer 172

2. I must finish the letter which I have *began* to write.
il faut que 157 *lettre f* *commencer*
 The rules which I had *advised* you to learn are useful.—
conseiller 135 *apprendre* *utile*
 How many) men *commit* the same faults which they
que d'hommes commettre (ir) *faute f*
 had *resolved* to avoid.
 B *résoudre (ir)* *d'éviter*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the GERUNDS and PARTICIPLES.

Philip sent deputies to the Scythians desiring a
Philippe envoyer c député 7 *Scythe pour demander*
 part of the expences of the siege; the Scythians, alleging
partie frais —m *alléguer* 140
 the barenness of their land, replied, that having no riches
stérilité *terre répondre c* *richesse*
 sufficient to satisfy so great a king, they thought it
 —sant 138 —faire *roi* *croire (ir)* B *
 more unfit to pay but a part, than to refuse the
moins convenable de payer 128 *partie* 40 —ser
 whole. Groveling geniuses never attain the sublime.
 105 *rampant* 140 *génie* 120 *s'élever à* —
 This actor performs with charming taste and
acteur représenter *un* 27 *charmant* 140 *goût*
 lignity. As a flower blowing in the morning
 —té de même qu' *fleur* 141 *s'épanouir* *matin répand*
 (sweetly perfumes) the fields around, the whole day,
un doux parfum dans champ d'alentour *jour*
 but fading towards the evening, loses its lively colours,
 140 *se flétrir vers* *soir perdre* *vif* 30 *couleur*
 languishes and drops its beautiful head; so was the son of
languir *pancher* *beau* *tête f* *ainsi* B
 Ulysses, brought to the gates of death.
 — *arriver* *porte*

All will respect the magistrates who, forgetting
tout le monde respecter Δ *magistrat* 140 *oublier*
 their own interest, observing the law, favouring virtue, and
 — *ver* *loi* *favoriser*
 restraining vice, seek the welfare of their country. The
réprimer *m* *chercher* *bien* *pays*
 fleet destined to the siege of Troy was composed of 1300
flotte *f* — *ner* 143 — *Troie* *B* — *ser* 143
 ships. The Cardinal Richelieu represented to the king
vaisseau *de* *représenter* *c* *roi*
 the great pains he had taken and the services he
peine *f* 83 *B* 143 *prendre* (*ir*) — *m*
 had done to the state. The books which I have bought
B 143 *rendre* *état* *livre* *m* 143 *acheter*
 are well bound. The watch which I have sold, is a new
relier *montre* *f* 143 *vendre* * *new*
 one. We acquire a greater honour by defending others
 * *on acquérir* (*ir*) *honneur* 142 *défendre*
 than by accusing them.
accuser

OF THE CONCORD OF VERBS.

RULE 145.—*The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case.*

All the personal verbs agree in French with their nominative case in number and person; examples:

I speak, thou speakest, he speaks.
Je parle, tu parles, il parle, &c.

All substantives are of the third person; thus a verb must always be put in the third person singular or plural, when it has a substantive for its nominative case; examples:

The master teaches. The scholars study.
Le maître enseigne—singular *Les écoliers étudient*—plural.

A verb is always put in the third person plural when it has two or more substantives for its nominative case, though they should be both in the singular; example:

Demosthenes and Cicero were two great orators.

Démosthène et Cicéron étoient deux grands orateurs.

I read the bible. Thou speakest too fast. He writes
lire (*ir*) *bible* *f* *trop vite* *écrire* (*ir*)
 well. We are all mortal. You are young. They are happy
mortel *jeune* *heureux*
 My brother and sister will dance. Virtue and vice have dif-
63 *danser* *m*

ferent consequences.

RULE 146.—*The Verb with nominatives of different persons.*

If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first, in preference to the other two, and with the second, in preference to the third; and is preceded by one of these two pronouns, *nous* and *vous*; example:

My brother and I shall go thither.

*Mon frère et moi nous * irons.*

You and he were speaking of us.

Vous et lui vous parliez de moi.

as if it were, *my brother and I* we shall go there; and so on for others.

You and I will play. You and they were of the same opinion. You or your father could lend me the two hundred pounds I want. You or your brother have taken my book. Lewis the fourteenth having said to the earl of Grammont; I know your age; the bishop of Senlis, who is eighty-four years of age, told me that you have studied in the same class; that bishop, Sire, replied the earl, does not speak right, for neither he nor I have ever studied.

jouer eux B
père 165 E prêter
prendre (ir) livre m Louis 11
comte savoir (ir) évêque
*avoir * * 153*
étudier ré-
pliquer 150 accuser juste ni 119 45

RULE 147.—*The verb after the relative Pronoun qui.*

The relative pronoun *qui* is of every person: thus, the verb which comes after it, agrees in number and person with the noun or pronoun antecedent; example:

It is we who have said it.

C'est nous qui l'avons dit—not, c'est nous qui l'a dit.

It was I who destroyed the fortifications of that city. It was you who refused my request. It is you, or your brother who have taken my book. It was you who

ce c détruire — ville ce
c —ser c requête f ce
146 prendre (ir) livre ce c

* *y* is always omitted before *irai*, *irois*, on account of the euphony.

came last night. It is they who have done it. It is I
venir c hier au soir 171 *faire le 57 ce*
 who have seen him. It is my brothers who have dis-
voir (ir) le 171 *dé-*
 covered the plot. It will be you who shall go there.
couvrir complot *aller **

CHAPTER XV.

OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. This mood comprehends the present tense, the imperfect, the preterite, the future and the conditional, with the same number of compound tenses.

RULE 148.—Use of the Present Tense.

1. The present tense of the indicative mood is used in French to express a thing present ; example :

I see a man who sleeps.
Je vois un homme qui dort.

2. A thing which we do habitually, though not in the moment in which we speak ; example :

I walk every day.
Je me promène tous les jours.

3. A thing of eternal truth ; example :

God is merciful.
Dieu est miséricordieux.

4. A future not distant ; example :

I go to-night to the play.
Je vais ce soir à la comédie.

History is the picture of times and men, and consequently the image of inconstancy and caprice. The rainbow (is formed) by the beams of the sun reflected by drops of rain. I (set out) for France to-morrow, if it be fine weather. I learn French, and my sister Italian. I go to night to the opera. God is immutable. I (set out) to-morrow for Paris.

histoire tableau temps 21 conse-
quemment *—ce —m arc-*
en-ciel se former de rayon soleil réfléchir 143
goutte de pluie partir 5 demain
faire (ir) temps apprendre (ir)
Italian ce soir immuable

RULE 149.—*Imperfect of the Indicative.*

1. The *imperfect* is used to express a past but habitual action, during a time not specified, and then it answers the English expression *I used to do*; example:

Cæsar was a great general.
César étoit un grand général.

2. The *imperfect* expresses also a present with respect to something past, and then it exactly answers the English expression *I was doing*; example:

I was dining when I heard that sad news.
Je dînois quand j'appris cette fâcheuse nouvelle.
not, j'étois dînant, nor je dînai quand &c.

1. Orpheus, according to the fable, mingled so agreeably
Orphée selon * —f mêler agréablement
his voice with his lute, that he stopped the course of rivers,
voix à luth arrêter cours rivière
calmed tempests, attracted the most savage beasts, and
calmer tempête attirer 44 sauvage bête f
(gave motion) to the trees and rocks.—2. I was writing
émouvoir (is) * arbre rocher 21 écrire
you a letter when I was informed of your arrival.—2. What
57 c —mer arrivée que
were you doing this morning in my room when I found
faire ce matin chambre f ai trouvé
you.—2. I was doing my exercise.
57 thème m

1. Alfred was a great king; he possessed all the virtues of
roi posséder
a wise man, which were so well regulated, that each prevented
sage 81 si réglé l'une empêcher
the other from exceeding its proper bounds; he knew
sortir de . borne savoir (ir)
how to unite the most enterprising spirit with the coolest
* * unir 44 entreprenant 31 esprit à plus grande
moderation, and the most severe justice with the greatest
31 —f à
lenity. The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high
douceur mur 36
and fifty broad.

RULE 150.—*Preterite of the Indicative.*

✧ The *preterite* of the indicative is used to express a particular fact or event, happening but once or very seldom in a time quite past, and at the distance of at least a day; example:

My father *died* yesterday. I *saw* the king last year.
Mon père mourut hier. Je vis le roi l'année passée.
 not, *mon père mourait hier*; nor, *je voyais le roi l'année passée.*

This tense is by some grammarians called the historical tense, because it is chiefly used in historical relations.

Cæsar *ascended* to the empire by very sanguinary means.
parvenir —m 31 —naire voie 7
 Alexander, with forty thousand men, *attacked* Darius who
Alexandre attaquer
 had six hundred thousand; he *gave* him battle twice,
en 149 livrer lui 57 bataille deux
defeated him, and *made* his mother, wife, and daughters
fois défaire le 57 faire 63 femme
 prisoners. Cato *killed* himself lest he should fall into the
*prisonnières tuer se 57 de peur de * tomber entre*
 hands of Cæsar.
main

Hardly *was* Cæsar entered into the senate, when the con-
à peine 92 entrer sénat que
 spirators *threw* themselves upon him, and *pierced* him
—teur jeter se 57 lui percer le 57
 with blows. Marius *was* (ill treated) by fortune; however,
de coup maltraiter de —f cependant
 he did not *lose* his courage.
*perdre * —*

RULE 151.—*Future and conditional.*

1. The *future* is used to express a time not yet come; example:

I shall soon go to France.
Jirai bientôt en France.

2. The *conditional* is used to express something to be done or to take place with dependence upon a condition; example:

We should be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires.
Nous serions, heureux, si nous savions fixer nos desirs.

3. The English often put the verb in the *present*, after the conjunctions *when*, *as soon as*, or *after*, when they want to express a thing not yet come; in such cases, the *future* must be used in French; example:

I will play as soon as I have finished my exercise.

Je jouerai aussitôt que j'aurai fini mon thème.

not, *aussitôt que j'ai fini*

3. As soon as my education is finished, I will go into Italy, to visit the Roman antiquities.—3. When you are ready, we will go and (take a walk).—3. The Lord said unto Cain, who had killed his brother Abel: When thou tillest the ground, it shall not yield unto thee; a fugitive labourer terre produire rien * —tif and vagabond thou shalt be on the earth*.
— sur terre

1. There will always be wars among men, because they are ambitious.—2. I would have lent him fifty pounds if I had known he wanted it. —1. hope you will not refuse me the favour I beg of you.
169 7 entre parce que
—tieux prêter : cinquante livre
B savoir qu'il en avoit besoin. espérer
—ser faveur 83 demander *

RULE 152.—Neither future nor conditional after *si*.

☞ 1. After the particle *si*, if, we use, in French, the present of the indicative instead of the future, and the imperfect instead of the preterite or conditional used in English; example:

He will become a learned man, if he will study.

Il deviendra savant s'il étudie.

not, *s'il étudiera.*

2. We use, however, the future and conditional in French as in English, after the particle, *si*, if, when it signifies *whether*; example:

I do not know if he will come, or if he would come.

Je ne sais pas s'il viendra, ou s'il viendrait.

* That is, thou shalt be fugitive, &c.

1. If your person *were* as gigantic as your desires, the
personne 37 —tesque *désir* 31
 whole world would not contain you; your right hand would
entier monde *contenir* 31 *droit f*
 touch the east, and your left the west (at the) same time;
orient *gauche* *occident* *en* *même temps*
 and, if you *should* have conquered all mankind, you would
conquerir (ir) *la terre*
 attempt to subdue nature. Said (the Scythian
entreprendre (ir) 135 *soumettre* — *l'ambassadeur*
 ambassador to Alexander.)
des Scythes *Alexandre.*

2. I do not know if my father would come, if you
savoir (ir) *venir en cas*
 were to invite him.—1. If I would sell my horse, I
que vous l'invitassiez *vendre* *cheval*
 could have forty pounds for him.—1. If you would
pouvoir (ir) *E* *livre* *en* 57
 study well, your master would love you, and you would
étudier *aimer* " " "
 make great progress.—1. I should become rich, if I would
faire (ir) *progrès* 8 *devenir riche*
 continue my trade.—2. I do not know if my brother will
—nuer *commerce m*
 consent to it.
—tir *y*

RULE 153.—Compound of the Present.

The compound of the present, or *preterit indefinite* is used in French to express a thing past in a time not yet elapsed, or at a time which is not specified; a time is not yet elapsed when the word *this* is, or could be prefixed to it; example:

I learnt my lesson this morning.
J'ai appris ma leçon ce matin
 not, *j'appris*, nor *j'apprenois*.

I breakfasted this morning at eight o'clock, and I dined
déjeuner *matin* *huit heure* *dîner*
 at three in the afternoon. When did you learn your
heures après-midi *avoir* *apprendre (ir)*
 lesson? I learnt it after dinner. Why did you not learn it
leçon 143 *143 la*
 before? because I was sick all the morning. Have you
auparavant *parce que* *malade* *matinée*
 done your exercise? No, I have not done it yet; but I will
thème *encore* 172

do it to-night. Where *did* you walk out to-day?
*ce soir où se promener * aujourd'hui?*
 I have not walked out because it was not good weather.
** parce que 179 B beau temps*

RULE 164.—Other Compound Tenses.

1. The *compound of the imperfect or pluperfect* is used to express a thing which has happened before another which is also past; but it is employed when the previous action was habitual, or when nothing points out the approximation of the two actions; example:

I had done my task, when she came to see us.
J'avois fait ma tâche, quand elle vint nous voir.

2. The *compound of the preterite or preterit anterior* is used to express an action past before another action in a time entirely elapsed, but it points out the end or the approximation of the two actions; example:

As soon as the king had spoken, every body obeyed.
Aussitôt que le roi eut parlé, tout le monde obéit.

1. Yesterday I *had finished* my work before six o'clock.
hier j'avais fini mon ouvrage heure

2. As soon as I *had dined*, I (went out). He *had* no sooner
dès que sortir 150

acted in that manner than he repented. When she *had*
agré de la sorte s'en repentir 150

perceived her error, she was quite ashamed.—1. Darius
s'apercevoir de 150 108 honteux

in his defeat being obliged to drink water full of mud,
défaite f —ger de boire 7 plein boue

assured his soldiers that he *had* never drunk with more
assurer 150 à soldat plus

pleasure. The king *had* named an admiral when he
18 plaisir nommer amiral on lui

heard of you.—2. As soon as the parliament *had* voted
parler c aussitôt que parlement voter

against the continuation of the war, the peace was made.
contre — guerre paix se faire c

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

William the conqueror was one of the greatest generals
Guillaume conquérant 149
 of his age; in him (were united) activity, vigilance, and
siècle m en s'unir 149 — *le* 9 —
 intrepidity; he was strict in his discipline, and kept his
 — *le* 149 *strict la* — *f* *tenir* 149
 soldiers in perfect obedience, yet he preserved their af-
dans un parfait obéissance *conserver* 150
 fection: he (was perfect master of) the military art; his
 — 149 *posséder à fond militaire* 31 —
 aspect was noble, his constitution robust, and nobody but
 — 149 — — *te* *personne que*
 himself could bend his bow.
lui ne pouvoir (ir) bander arc

Idomeneus, one of the bravest kings of the Greeks, on
Idoménée 31 *roi Grec sur*
 the point of being shipwrecked, made a vow to sacrifice
 — 135 *faire naufrage* 150 * *vœu* 135 *sacrifier*
 to Neptune the first object he should meet on his arrival in
 — *objet rencontrer à arrivée*
 his country, should he escape the present danger; he
pays si 152 *échapper au* 31 —
 was unhappy enough to meet with his own son, he
assez malheureux 138 *rencontrer **
 killed him, and was for that action obliged to quit his
 150 *le pour* — *de quitter*
 country.
pays

Cæsar and Cato had the same degree of glory, but
Caton 149 *degré gloire*
 they acquired it by different ways; Cæsar was celebrated for
acquérir 154 31 7 *voie f* 149 *célèbre par*
 his generosity, Cato for his great integrity; in the former, the
générosité intégrité premier
 miserable found a sanctuary, in the latter the guilty
trouver 149 *refuge m dernier coupable*
 met with certain destruction: Cæsar aimed at the so-
trouver 149 * *un* 31 — *aspirer* 149
 vereign command, and desired new wars to display
 30 *commandement* 149 *nouveau guerre* 138 *deployer*
 his military talents; as for Cato, his only study was
 31 — *quant à seul étude f* 149

moderation, a regular conduct, and a rigorous severity ;
 — régulier 31 conduite f rigoureux 31
 he contended in bravery with the brave, in modesty with
 rivaliser 149 en bravoure — modestie
 the modest, and in integrity with the upright.
 homme — juste

After Alexander had conquered Porus, he not only
 après que 154 vaincre (ir) non-seulement
 spared his life, but allowed him to retain his
 épargner 150 vie permettre (ir) lui 57 135 garder
 title of king, and enlarged his dominions. As soon as
 tstem roi agrandir 150 état aussitôt que
 the Israelites had passed the Red Sea they forgot the
 154 passer Rouge 31 mer oublier 150
 miracle that had saved them.
 — m sauver 143 les 57

CHAPTER XVI.

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 155 — *Superlatives and Indeterminate Pronouns govern the Subjunctive.*

1. The superlative governs the next verb in the subjunctive, when that verb is preceded by *qui* or *que*; example

He is the most learned man I know in London.
Il est le plus savant que je connoisse à Londres.

2. *Qui* or *que* after the indeterminate pronouns *quelque*, whatever or however; *qui que ce soit*, whosoever; *aucun*, none; *pas un*, not one; *personne*, nobody; *rien*, nothing; govern the next verb in the subjunctive; example:

There is no one who does it more easily than they.
Il n'y a personne qui le fasse plus aisément qu'eux.

3. *Qui* or *que* after the words *l'unique*, *le seul*, the only one, and also generally after the ordinal numbers *le premier*, the first; *le second*, the second; *le troisième*, the third; &c. govern the next verb in the subjunctive; examples:

There is the only one I have.
Voilà l'unique, or le seul que j'aye.
 It is the first time he has been mistaken.
C'est la première fois qu'il se soit trompé.

1. Homer, who invented the fables of gods and demi-
 — ter 150 — 14 dieu —

gods, is the most agreeable liar that ever was. The
dieu menteur jamais 163
 most just comparison that can be made of love
 31 — *raison* 162 on *pouvoir* (ir) * *faire* amour
 is that of a fever; we have no more power over the one,
 76 *fièvre* f 98 18 *pouvoir* m
 than over the other, on account of its violence and duration.
à raison 63 — *durée*

2. There is no man but would be very sorry, if he
il n'y a personne qui ne 164 *fâché*
 knew all that is thought of him, whatever merit
savoir (ir) 149 *ce qu'on* * *penser* 46 *quelque mérite*
 he might have. However ingenious the Greeks and Romans
 164 109 *ingénieux* *Grec* *Romain*
 were, yet they neither found out the art of printing books,
touver * 150 — 135 *imprimer* 7
 nor of engraving prints.
ni celui graver estampe 7

3. You are the first person I have seen to-day.
personne f 83 *voir* (ir) 143 *aujourd'hui*
 3. Lucretius and Pliny are the only (natural philosophers)
Lucrèce *Pline* *seul* *naturaliste*
 whom the Romans had.
Romain *alent eu* 143

RULE 156.—*Verbs which always govern the Subjunctive Mood, after the Conjunction que.*

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que*, is put in the subjunctive after the verbs which express any doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of the mind; and particularly after the following, *appréhender, avoir peur, craindre, défendre, désirer, douter, être bien aise, être content, être fâché, être surpris, ignorer, nier, ordonner, prier, se réjouir, souhaiter, and vouloir*; examples:

I will be obeyed. I doubt whether he will come.
Je veux qu'on m'obéisse. Je doute qu'il vienne.

Who doubts that true riches (are placed) in virtue?
douter 30 *richesse* *ne consister* 162 *dans*
 The Egyptians did not doubt that certain plants and animals
Egyptien 149 27 *plante* f
 were divinities. In the mean time Eucharis said to Te-
ne 162 *divinité* 7 *en* * *temps* — 150 *Te-*

lemachus, in a jeering tone: Are you not afraid that
l'émache d' moqueur 31 ton craindre
 Mentor will chide you for coming a hunting without
 — *ne gronder 57 de venir à la chasse sans*
 him? Almost all the east ordered divine honours to be
presque orient 150 que 31 7 honneur 162
 rendered, and temples to be built to Jason; but many
rendre que 7 — bâtir à — mais
 years after, Parmenio ordered them (to be pulled down,)
Parménion faire 150 les abattre 134
 lest the name of (any one) should be greater than
de peur que 158 nom quelqu'un ne
 that of Alexander.
 76 *Alexandre*

RULE 157.—Impersonal Verbs which govern the Subjunctive.

A verb preceded by *que* is always put in the subjunctive after the impersonals, *il faut*, *il est juste*, *il est injuste*, *il est fâcheux*, *il importe*, and in general after all the impersonal verbs, not mentioned in rule 160; example:

You must do it.

Il faut que vous le fassiez.

It is an unjust thing, that those who deserve well of their
** injuste * mériter*
 country are not rewarded. It concerns the public that the
pays 162 récompenser 143 importe au
 wicked be punished. There is no state which cannot
méchans punir 169 état ne pouvoir (ir)
 be utterly overthrown by civil wars. It (is enough) that
totalemt détruire guerre suffire
 we do not neglect any thing that can contribute to
 98 *négliger rien de ce qui pouvoir (ir) — buer*
 the success of an undertaking; disappointments ought not
succès entreprise f les contre-temps devoir A 134
 to lessen the merit of it. If you (are desirous) of being
diminuer mérite en 57 vouloir (ir) 134
 esteemed, you must be obliging, polite and affable to
estimer il faut que vous — geant poli — 34
 every body.
tout le monde.

RULE 158.—Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.

A verb is always put in the subjunctive after the following conjunctions, *afin que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *bien que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *en cas que*, *encore que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *loin que*, *malgré que*, *nonobstant que*, *non que*, *non pas que*,

posé que, pourvu que, pour que, quoique, sans que, soit que, and supposé que; example:

I will be ready before they arrive.

Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient venus.

(Keep a strict watch) over all your senses, lest *
veillez avec soin sur sens de peur que
 intemperance (get the master of) you, and lest your senses be
 — *maîtriser vous 57 que ser-*
 the instruments of polluting your soul. Although Antio-
vir d' — pour souiller âme quoique
 chus approved of Hannibal's advice, yet he would
 — *approuver* Annibal 17 avis vouloir (ir) c*
 not act according to it, lest the victory should be
agir en conséquence de peur que victoire
 attributed to Hannibal, not to him.
et non pas à lui

We despise the world when we know it thoroughly,
mépriser monde m connoître parfaitement
 but we give ourselves to it before we know it, and the
livrer nous y 58 avant que le
 heart is lost, before reason has enlightened it. You
cœur perdre avant que raison 162 éclairer le 57
 will learn very well, provided you take pains. I
apprendre pourvu que prendre de la peine
 will study (so much), that I hope I shall speak French
étudier tant espérer François
 before it is long, though I am convinced that it is
long-temps quoique convaincre (ir) ce
 a difficult language.
difficile 31 langue f

VERBS and CONJUNCTIONS which govern sometimes the **INDICATIVE** and sometimes the **SUBJUNCTIVE**.

RULE 159.—Verbs which govern the Subjunctive in one sense, and the Indicative in another.

✚ The following verbs, *assurer, avouer, conclure, croire, déclarer, dire, espérer, juger, oublier, penser, prédire, prévoir, promettre, soutenir, savoir, supposer, voir*, and in ge-

* A moins que, de crainte que and de peur que, require the particle *ne* before the next verb, as we have said before, Rule 127.

neral all those which express belief or certainty, govern most commonly the subjunctive, when they are used interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally; but they govern the indicative in other circumstances; example:

I think she will do it, if she can.

Je crois qu'elle le fera, si elle peut—affirmat. indic.

Croyez vous qu'elle le fasse—interrog. subj.

Je ne crois pas qu'elle le fasse—negativ. subj.

Si vous croyez, qu'elle le fasse—condit. subj.

I think my father will come. I do not think he will
croire (ir) venir

come. Do you think he will come? I perceive that you have
s'apercevoir

deceived me. If I find you frequent bad company,
tromper s'apercevoir 83 fréquenter 8—gnie

you will lose my friendship. I hope they will make
perdre amitié espérer on faire

peace this year. Do you hope they will make peace? Let us
paix année on

go, if you think it will be fine weather. I thought this
partir 179 croire 153

morning it would be fine weather, but now I do not think it
matin à présent

it will be, because it begins to rain.

cela être 136

RULE 160.—Impersonal Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.

The impersonal verbs which denote evidence, certainty or probability, such as, *il est clair, il est certain, il est probable, il est évident, &c.* govern the Subjunctive when they are used in a negative, interrogative, or conditional manner, and the indicative, when they are not; examples:

It is certain that he is in the wrong.

Il est certain qu'il a tort—indic. *Il n'est pas certain qu'il ait tort*—subj. *Est-il certain qu'il ait tort*—subj. *S'il est certain qu'il ait tort*—subj.

It is certain that unforeseen evils are more grievous
imprévu 31 mal fâcheux
than others. It is not certain that a man can be happy in
autre certain

a desert. It is evident, that a nation cannot be happy under
désert — sous

a tyrannical government. It is not certain that a repub-
—que gouvernement répu-

lic is the best government for a great nation. It is probable *il* *le* *meilleur* *—* *probable* he *will* do it. It is probable she *will* do it. It is not probable they *will* do it.

RULE 161.—*Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

These four conjunctions *de manière que*, *de sorte que*, *telle-ment que*, *sinon que*, govern the indicative, when the sentence positively affirms that such a thing is or will be; and the subjunctive, when the thing in question is not certain, but rather wished for; example:

I have nothing to tell you except that I do my duty.

Je n'ai rien à vous dire sinon que je fais mon devoir—indic.

I ask nothing except that you do your duty.

Je ne demande rien sinon que vous fassiez votre devoir—sub.

Employ all the days of your youth, so that you may
employer H jeunesse de manière que
 fulfil honourably all the duties of your station. Your
—emplit honorablement devoir état
 son conducts himself in such a manner that he gains general
*se conduire de * * manière gagner 31*
 esteem. I ask nothing from you except that you do
*estime f demander 118 * vous 57 sinon que*
 your task, and obey your master. I have nothing
tâche f que vous obéir à rien
 to tell you, except that I have done, and shall always do,
à 57 sinon que qué je
 what religion commands all christians.
74 — —der à chrétien

RULE 162.—*Which Tense must be used.*

☞ A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules, is usually put in the *present*, when the first verb is in the present, future, or imperative; it is put in the *preterite*, when the first verb is in any other tense; example:

I do not think they will write to-day.

Je ne crois pas qu'ils écrivent aujourd'hui—present subj.

I did not think they would write to your sister.

Je ne croyois pas qu'ils écrivissent à votre sœur—preterite.

A man ought to conduct himself so honourably, that no
devoir A se conduire si 121
 motives should be able to induce him to an action un-
motif pouvoir (ir) — in-

worthy of his rank. The apostles received the gift of
digne rang apôtre recevoir c don
 tongues, that they might preach the gospel to all
langue afin que pouvoir (ir) prêcher évangile
 the nations of the earth. If you are assiduous and
 — *terre* — *du et que vous*
 take pains, you will succeed. Before I form any
96 de la peine réussir avant que former
 plan, I shall wait till things have a more tranquil ap-
 — *attendre que* 31 *ap-*
 pearance. David (gave orders) that his subjects should be
parence — ordonner c qu'on sujet faire le
 numbered*, which excited the displeasure of God.
dénombrement de ce qui — ter c déplaisir
 Do you think they will do it? Did you think they would do
penser B
 it? I did not think they would come to-day.
 B

RULE 163.—Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.

When it is meant to express an action past in a time anterior to the action expressed by the first verb, the second verb is usually put in the compound of the present of the subjunctive in French, when the first verb is in the present, or the future in English; but it is put in the compound of the preterite, when the first verb is in any other tense; examples:

I fear they have said it.

Je crains qu'ils ne l'aient dit.—present tense.

I did not fear they had said it.

Je ne craignois pas qu'ils l'eussent dit.—preterite.

I doubt whether any philosophers have ever known the
douter que s — phe s jamais
 origin of the winds. I wonder you have refused the em-
 — *ne vent être surpris — ser*
 ployment that has been offered you. I never could have
place 143 offrir 57 pouvoir 167
 thought that the Emperor would have submitted to such
penser Empereur se soumettre (ir) si
 hard conditions. Garrick was perhaps the best tragic
dur 31 — 7 c peut être tragique
 actor which the world has ever produced.
acteur 155 monde m produire

* That is: that they should make the survey of his subjects

RULE 164.—Cases in which the Preterite of the Subjunctive is used.

The verb is always put in the *preterite* of the subjunctive, or its compound, when there is any conditional expression; though the first be in the present or future; example:

I do not think they would have come, if I had not gone
Je ne crois pas qu'ils fussent venus si je n'avois été
 to fetch them.
les chercher.

It is not probable you could have obtained the con-
 sent of your father, if I had not spoken in your favour.
sentement 83 *obtenir* *con-*
 do not think that the French revolution would ever
croire (ir) 31 *ré-*
 have happened, had Lewis the Sixteenth vigorously op-
être arriver si Louis seize 172 se fût op-
 posed the first innovations. Do you think your brothers
posé à — *penser*
 would learn French, should I teach them.
apprendre (ir) *si le enseigner B leur 57*

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the Use of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

There is no grief which length of time does not
 169 *point chagrin* 18 * *
 lessen. Erostratus set on fire the temple of Diana, that
diminuer —te mettre c le feu à —m Diane après
 his name might be spread through the whole
que 158 nom se repandre par

earth. Philosophers are composed of flesh and bones as well
 —*phe* 143 —*ser chair os aussi-bien*
 as other men; and, however sublimated their theories
que 109 *élevé théorie*
 may be, they are liable to frailties, as well as other mortals.

sujet foiblesse 7
 The bark of trees was used to write upon before paper
*de l'écorce arbre 98 se servir B pour * 158 papier*
 was invented.

—*ter*

The Emperor Caligula wished that all the citizens or
empereur — désirer B 156 citoyen

Rome had but one neck, that he might behead them
 128 *couru afin que* 158 *pouvoir décapiter*
 all at once. Whatever riches we may have, and however
à la fois 155 *richesse*
 unsuccessful may be our literary productions, we are never
malheureux *littéraire* 31 — 120
 contented with our fortune, nor dissatisfied with our under-
content 32 — *mécontent* 32 *es-*
 standing. A man who has no friends, has nobody he can
prit *point* 18 155
 rely upon, nor from whom he may expect any fa-
compter sur qui 174 *de qui* *pouvoir attendre*
voir.

The love of our enemies must have no bounds in
amour *ennemi ne doit point* 18 *borne*
 the heart; though in the outward behaviour, it may
cœur quoique 158 *extérieur* 31 *conduite* *il* *pouvoir*
 have some limitation. Lightning appears before the thunder
 7 *limites* *éclair* *paraître* 158 *tonnerre* *m*
 is heard. Unless a book be instructive or enter-
 96 *entendre à moins que* 158 *ne* — *tif* *amu-*
 taining, I do not care to read it. Though ambition is
sant *se soucier* 135 158 —
 a vice, it is nevertheless the foundation of many virtues.
 — *néanmoins* *base* *f* *bien* 18

Though an honourable title may be conveyed
quoique 158 *honorable* 31 *titre* *m* *pouvoir* *se transmettre*
 to posterity, yet the ennobling qualities, such as great-
qui anoblissent 141 — *té* *telles que* *gran-*
 ness of the soul, cannot be transferred. Christopher Colum-
deur *âme* *se transmettre* — *phé* *Colomb*
 bus, by an effort of genius and intrepidity, the most successful
 — *génie* 20 *intrépidité* *heureux*
 that is recorded in the annals of mankind, opened
 155 98 *trouver* *annales du genre humain* *ouvrir* 150
 to his contemporaries the way to a new world..
 — *rains* *chemin de* *monde* *m*

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULAR, *would, could, should, &c.*

RULE 165.—*would, could, should*, expressed by *vouloir, pou-*
voir, devoir.

The words *will* or *would* are expressed in French by the
 verb *vouloir*, when they imply an explicit will. *Could* or
might are expressed by *pouvoir*, when they denote possibi-

lity: and *should* by *devoir*, when it denotes necessity or duty; example:

He will not obey his superiors.
Il ne veut pas obéir à ses supérieurs.

Why do you not speak French?—Because I cannot;
pourquoi François parce que pouvoir (ir)
 if I could, I would *. We are born for society; we should
le 152 le faire (ir) E nés A
 therefore contribute to the advantage of the community. If
donc —buer bien —nauté
 you could lend me your horse, you would oblige me (very
152 prêter —ger E beau-
 much). I am sorry I cannot to-day; if I could, I
*coup fâché de * le aujourd'hui le 152*
 certainly would not refuse you; if you had asked for
*certainement 172 refuser E 152 **
 it yesterday, you could have had it then, or if you could
le hier 167 alors 132
 wait till to-morrow, it would be at your disposal.
attendre jusqu'à demain E service
 Marshal Turenne would not take (any thing) from mer-
le maréchal de — B prendre rien mar-
 chants upon trust, lest they might lose a part of it,
chand à crédit de peur que 158 perdre partie en 57
 should he be killed in battle.
s'il B tuer bataille

RULE 166.—*would, could, &c. not followed by a Compound Tense.*

If the irregular *would, could, should, and might*, are not followed by a compound tense, they are expressed in French by the imperfect, the preterite of the indicative, the conditional, or the preterite of the subjunctive, of the verbs *vouloir, pouvoir, &c.* according as the sense requires it; examples:

I could do it yesterday. I could do it formerly.
Je pouvois le faire hier Je pus le faire autrefois.
 I could, if I would. I do not think I could.
Je le pourrois, si je voulois. Je ne crois pas que je le pusse.

RULE 167.—*would, could, &c. followed by a Compound Tense.*

If the irregular *would, could, should, and might*, are followed by a compound tense, the sentence is rendered by the

* Would, could, should, or might, are not expressed in other cases, and are only the mark of a tense, as *je parlerois, I would speak.*

imperfect or the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, *dû*, or *voulû*, if you speak of something already done; and by the conditional of *pouvoir*, *devoir*, or *vouloir*, and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive, if you speak of something not yet done; examples:

You should have written to me, since you knew my direction.

Vous auriez dû m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.

I could have finished my letter before him*.

Je pourrois avoir fini ma lettre avant lui.

I could have done my exercise as soon as you if I
 faire *thème aussi vite que*
 would; but then it would not have been done so well as it is.

152 *mais* *faire si bien qu'il l'est*
 If you would have studied French, you might have learnt it
 si 152 *étudier* *apprendre*

in a short time when you were in France. Cities could not
 * *peu de temps* B *ville*

have been built without an assembly of men. I think that
 bâtir *assemblée* *croire (ir)*

if our general would have pursued the enemy, he might
 général 152 *poursuivre (ir)* *ennemi pl*

have taken their ammunition. I could have lent you two
 prendre (ir) *munition pl* *prêter*

hundred pounds yesterday, but I do not think I can at
 livre *hier* *croire 83 je le puisse*

present, because I have bought a horse this morning.
 parce que *acheter* *matin*

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS *il faut*, *il y a*, &c.

RULE 168.—*il faut*, it must.

✧ The verb *must* is expressed in French by the impersonal *il faut que*. The nominative of *must* becomes the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood; example:

* If you are at a loss in which tense to put in French these irregular would, could, should, &c. turn them by the verb to be willing, to be able, or to be obliged, and then put *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, or *devoir*, in the same tense as is the verb to be in English, and you will never be mistaken.

Your brother must come here to-morrow.

Il faut que votre frère vienne ici demain.

They must do it.

Il faut qu'ils le fassent.

as if it were, It must that your brother come.

Children *must* obey their parents. Men *must* practise

obéir 130 —

pratiquer

virtue. I *must* have a new hat. A woman *must* have

neuf 31 *chapeau*

(a great deal) of circumspection when speaking of herself. I

beaucoup

retenue

en

have sold my house: I *must* buy another. You *must*

vendre

en acheter

have a new book. They *must* have new stockings. They

neuf

has 7

must answer. You *must* go there.

répondre

y

RULE 169.—*il y a*, there is.

1. The impersonals, *there is*, or *there are*; *there was*, or *there were*, &c. are expressed in French by *il y a* for the present tense, *il y avoit* for the imperfect, *il y eut* for the preterite, *il y aura* for the future, *il y auroit* for the conditional, *il y ait* for the present subjunctive, and *il y eût* for the preterite; example:

There is no talent more shining than that of speaking.

Il n'y a point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.

2. The impersonal *il y a* is also used to ask the distance from one place to another; then it answers to the words *how far*; example: *combien y a-t-il de Douvres à Calais?* how far is Dover from Calais?—to ask the number of inhabitants, years, months, cities, &c. then it answers to the words *how many*; example: *combien y a-t-il de villes en Angleterre?* how many towns are there in England?—to ask the time since any thing happened; then it answers to the words *how long*? example: *combien y a-t-il qu'elle est morte?* how long has she been dead? and in this case the following verb (when it expresses something still existing) is put in the present of the indicative.

1. There is no less eloquence in the tone of the voice,

pas moins 18

dans

ton

voix

in the eyes and the gesture, than in the choice of words.

geste m que

choix

mot

There is in true virtue, a candour which nothing can

—deur

118

pouvoir (ir)

counterfeit.—2. *How long* have you been in England?—These

contrefaire

combien

Angleterre

*

five years.—2. How long has your father been dead?—2. How
 ans long have you learnt geography?—2. How far is Rouer mort
 from Paris?—2. How far is London from Vienna?—2. How
 —dres —ne
 many inhabitants are there in France?—2. How many towns
 18 habitant en 18 ville
 are there in England?—1. There is nothing made by the
 Angleterre rien de
 hands of men, which time does not destroy.
 main temps détruire 165

RULE 170.—Distinction between *c'est* and *il est*.

☞ 1. The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* is usually expressed by *il est, il étoit, il fut, &c.* when it is followed by an adjective, without reference to any thing expressed before example:

It is very difficult to please every body.

Il est très-difficile de plaire à tout le monde—not c'est.

2. *It is, it was,* is expressed by *c'est* or *c'étoit*, when it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb; example:

It is my brother who says so. It is you who have seen him.

*C'est mon frère qui le dit. C'est vous qui l'avez vu.**

not *il est mon frère qui le dit*, nor *il est vous qui l'avez vu*.

2. *It is* a certain mark of fortitude to preserve the soul

31 marquef courage 135 son âme
 from pride in prosperity, and to shun (depressing anx-
 orgueil prospérité d'éviter le décourage-

ment in adversity.—1. *It is* more glorious to conquer
 ment glorieux 135 se vaincre

ones'-self than to conquer an enemy.—2. *It was* envy which
 soi même ennemi 150 envie

caused the death of Abel.—2. *It is* you who have spoken of it.
 causer mort parler en 57

—2. *It is* the character of a great genius to intimate
 caractère m génie 135 exprimer

many things in few words.—1. *It is* certain that men
 beaucoup 18 peu 18 mot

could not live long in society without civil laws.
 pouvoir (ir) E long-temps 31 loi 7

* *It is, is* usually expressed by *il est* or *il étoit* (and not by *c'est*), when it is followed by a substantive which has reference to time, as, *il est temps de partir, it is time to set out*, not, *c'est temps de partir*.

It is late ; it is time to go to bed. What o'clock is it ?
tard 135 *aller se coucher* *heure*
 It is past ten ; it is almost eleven *.
plus de *presque*

RULE 171.—*c'est, ce sont*, it is.

✧ The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *ce sont* when it is followed by a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles* in the nominative case ; example :

It is they who speak ; *it is* they who have seen him.
Ce sont eux qui parlent : ce sont elles qui l'ont vu.
 not, *il est*, nor, *c'est eux qui parlent*, &c.

2. The impersonal *it is*, is expressed by *c'est* in all other cases, even before a substantive plural, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, if they are not in the nominative case ; example :

It is you who say so. *It is* for them to speak.
C'est vous qui le dites. C'est à eux à parler, not, *ce sont*.
 1. It is the Phœnicians who invented the art of writing.
Phénicien —ter 153

—1. It is not those who speak much, who are the most
ceux beaucoup
 esteemed.—2. It is for you to obey.—2. It was to your
estimer à d'obéir 150
 brothers I lent that money.—2. It is to them I speak.
frère 83 prêter argent eux 83

—1. It is your ancestors, who by their virtue have trans-
ancêtre trans-
 mitted you the titles you enjoy ; it is they who have
mettre (ir) titre dont jouir eux
 rendered your name great ; imitate them, if you wish to
rendre imiter H vouloir (ir)
 be worthy of their name †.
digne nom

CHAPTER XIX.

SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE 172.—*Adverbs after the Verbs.*

✧ Adverbs are placed in French after the verb when it is in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the parti-

* The word *heure* is always expressed after the cardinal numbers, unless two or more are in the same part of a sentence, as, depuis six heures jusqu'à huit, et depuis neuf jusqu'à onze.

† I have not put a recapitulatory exercise to these chapters, because they are easily understood.

ciple when it is in a compound one; they are never put as in English, between the nominative and the verb; example:

They never say what they think.

Ils ne disent jamais ce qu'ils pensent.

not, *ils ne jamais disent* *.

We seldom repent of talking little, but very often
on rarement se repentir 135 *parler peu* *souvent*
 of talking (too much). Homer sometimes slumbers (in the
trop *Homère quelquefois sommeiller au*
 midst of Gods and heroes. Your exercise is not well done,
milieu dieu 14 *héros* *thème*
 you have done it hastily. Never reproach any one

57 *à la hâte* 173 *reprocher à personne*
 with the services you do them. Courtiers often pass their

* —in 83 *rendre lui* 57 *courtisan passer*
 life in the hope of acquiring what they never obtain.

espérance 135 *acquérir* 74 *obtenir*
 The love of earthly things is always accompanied with an

terrestre 31 *bien* *accompagner* 32
 indifference towards heavenly. What is made with

— *pour les bien célestes* *ce qui se fait avec*
 pleasure, is generally well made.

plaisir *ordinairement*

RULE 173.—Place of Adverbs.

The following adverbs of time, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, *hier*, the adverbs compounded of several words, and those which govern a noun after them, are usually placed after the participle, and even after the words it may govern; examples:

He has acted conformably to his principles.

Il a agi conformément à ses principes

He has prudently managed that business.

Il a conduit cette affaire avec prudence.

not, *il a conformément agi à ses principes; il a avec prudence conduit.*

If you had acted conformably to reason and justice,
 152 *agir conformément* *raison* f 177

nobody would have condemned your conduct. He has
condamner *conduite*

often spoken well of you. As I wanted to (go out
 172 *parler en bien* *comme avoir besoin de sortir*

this morning, I have done my exercise hastily. You have
matin *faire* *thème à la hâte*

given me (too much) bread. I shall have done to morrow.

18 *pain* *finir*

* The adverbs, *bien*, *well*, *mieux*, *better*, *mal*, *ill*, are generally placed before the verb, when in the infinitive.

CHAPTER XX.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE 174.—Place of Prepositions.

✧ The prepositions are always placed in French before the words which they govern, and never after, as they are sometimes in English; examples:

What is that for? Whom do you complain of?
Pourquoi cela? *de qui vous plaignez-vous?*
 not, *qui celu pour?* *qui vous plaignez-vous de?*

Whom do you speak to? What does he complain of?
qui *quoi* *se plaindre*
 Whom shall I apply myself to? As magistrates are
 adresser me 57 *de même que* — *tratt*
 above the people, so the laws are above magistrates.
au dessus du peuple ainsi *loi*
 We fancy that the antipodes are under us, they think that
s'imaginer — *sous* *croire (ir)*
 we are under them; but all are upon the earth, for no part of
 eux *sur* 121 *partie*
 a surface can be upon another part of the same surface.
 pouvoir (ir) *une autre*

RULE 175.—How to express from followed by to.

1. When the prepositions *from* and *to* are used to express the distance, or the going from one place to another, *from* is expressed by *de*, and *to* by *à*, if we speak of a particular place; examples:

I go from Rouen to Caen in one day.
Je vais de Rouen à Caen en un jour.
 He wanders from the cellar to the garret.
Il va de la cave au galetas.

2. But *to* is expressed by *en* instead of *à* before the name of a country, or when the same substantive is repeated; examples:

We have travelled from Italy to Switzerland.
Nous avons voyagé d'Italie en Suisse.

I go from house to house, from street to street, &c.
Je vais de maison en maison, de rue en rue.

1. I can go in one day from Calais to Paris, and
 pouvoir (ir) *en* *jour* — —
 in two hours from Paris to Versailles.—2. I like to travel;
 heure — *aimer* 136 *voyager*
 I went from Germany to Russia, and from Russia to
 aller 182 *Allemagne* *Russie*

Sweden.—1. (How far) is it from London to Winchester
Suède combien 169 Londres
 and from Winchester to Salisbury?—2. You spend all the
 day in going from house to house, from street to street, and
à aller passer
 from place to place. 1. How many miles from Chelsea
 — *Combien y a-t-il de rue*
 to the Tower? It is not far from his house to the river.
tour f 169 loin rivière

RULE 176.—*depuis, jusqu'à, from, to.*

When the prepositions *from*, and *to* are used to express a duration of time, *from* is expressed by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*; example:

I have been sick from Christmas to Easter *.
J'ai été malade depuis Noël jusqu'à Pâques.

A poor ploughman, who works from morning to night,
laboureur travailler matin soir
 when he is well paid for his labour, lives as content as
payer de travail vivre (ir) que
 a king. I have drank the cup to the dregs. I
boire (ir) calice m lie s.
 walk every day from ten to twelve, and I study
se promener dix heures midi étudier
 from six in the afternoon to eight, sometimes to nine.
six heures après-midi huit quelquefois neuf

RULE 177.—*Prepositions repeated.*

☞ The prepositions *de, à, en, contre, and sans*, are usually repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb, whether they are repeated or not in English; example:

He is in a state of doubt, fear and distrust.

Il est dans un état de doute, de crainte, et de défiance.

The other prepositions are repeated before words of different signification, but not when they are pretty near of the same.

Foreigners take pleasure in admiring at Amster-
étranger prendre (ir) plaisir à admirer à —
 dam the singular mixture formed by the ridges of houses,
singulier 31 mélange former toit
 the tops of trees, and the flags of ships, which present
cime f pavillon vaisseau 74

* The preposition *to* is always expressed by *jusqu'à* when *à* signifies so far as. Example: *je le poursuivrai jusqu'au bout*; I will prosecute him to the end.

in the same place, an idea of the sea, the city and the country. — *idée mer ville campagne* Heroes formerly sacrificed themselves for their *héros autrefois* 172 *sacrifier se* 57 country, or their mistresses, at present nothing is done but *pays maîtresse se faire que* for fortune or pleasure.

Jesus Christ came into the world to redeem men, and to *venir* 153 *monde* 138 *racheter* destroy the empire of the devil. Charity does nothing without *détruire démon charité rien sans* consideration and order. Our laws do not condemn any person without having heard and examined him. *ni ordre condamner* 139 *entendre examiner le*

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

RULE 178.—To be expressed by *avoir*.

✎ The verb *to be* is expressed by the verb *avoir* when it is followed, 1. By a word of dimension (see Rule 36). 2. By the words *hungry, dry, or thirsty*. 3. By the words *hot, warm, or cold* *. 4. By the words *in the right, in the wrong, ashamed, or afraid*. 5. By *in vain*. 6. In speaking of the age of a person, or animal.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Il a six pieds, | he is six feet high. |
| 2. Avez-vous faim? | are you hungry? |
| 3. Avez-vous froid? | are you cold? |
| 4. Vous avez raison, | you are in the right. |
| 5. Vous avez beau dire. | it is in vain for you to say so. |
| 6. Quel âge avez vous? | how old are you? |
| J'ai quinze ans. | I am fifteen. |

1. Some whales are a hundred feet long, their tails are *baleine pied* 35 *queue* more than twelve feet in circumference, and their fins are *de circonference nageoire* about seven feet long.—6. How old was your father when *environ* 35 *quel âge* B 65

* The part of the body which is cold or hot is preceded in French by *au, à la, or aux*, as *j'ai froid aux pieds*.

he died?—He was seventy*. And your mother?—she
mourir c 149 soixante-dix ans 65
 was almost eighty.—2. I do not remember to have ever
près de quatre-vingts se ressouvenir 135 jamais
 been so thirsty as I was yesterday.—3. Warm yourself, if you
si soif que c hier se chauffer
 are cold; my feet are not cold, because I have walked much,
froid
 but my hands are so cold, that I cannot write.—1. There
si froid pouvoir (ir) 169
 are some walks in our park which are three hundred feet
7 allée parc
 long.—4. You are in the wrong, and he is in the right.
tort raison.

5. It is in vain for you to ask money from a miser, he
demandeur d avare
 never will give you any.—6. How old is your daughter?
donner en 58 quel âge 65
 she will be eighteen next March. I did not think she
dix-huit au mois de Mars prochain croire 83
 was more than fifteen.—4. When we heard that your coach
159 de apprendre 150 carrosse
 had been stopped by some ruffians, we were afraid they
arrêter 7 voleur peu que 126
 would have murdered you.—Are your feet cold? No, on
164 tuer 57 pied au
 the contrary they are very warm; but my hands are cold.
contraire j'y ai chaud

RULE 179.—To be expressed by *faire*.

✍ The verb *to be* is usually expressed by *faire*, before the words *soleil, vent, chaud, froid*, and in general when we speak of the kind or disposition of the weather; example:

It is fine weather.

Il fait beau temps.

Is it cold this morning?—Yes, Sir, it is very cold;
matin oui très
 however, I do not think it is quite so cold as it
cependant croire (ir) 83 159 tout-à-fait si
 was yesterday. The weather is very inconstant; it was hot
B hier temps B chaud

* The word *an*, year, when speaking of age, must always be used in French after the cardinal number, though it is not expressed in English.

yesterday, it is cold to day ; it rained this morning ; it is fine
aujourd'hui pleuvoir 153 matin
 weather now, but perhaps it will rain again before it be
peut-être encore avant que 158
 night. If it be fine weather to-morrow, I will go to the play,
nuit demain aller (ir) comédie
 but if it be bad weather, I shall not go. When I was in
mauvais B à
 the country, it was very bad weather ; now I am come
campagne f B à présent que
 to town it is very fine weather, and if I was to return into the
en ville je retournois à
 country, I fear it would be bad weather again.
craindre 126 G encore 172

RULE 180.—To be expressed by *se porter*.

✧ The verbs *to be* or *to do*, used in English to inquire after, or to speak of the health of somebody, are expressed in French by the reflected verb *se porter* ; example :

How does your father do?—he is very well,
Comment se porte monsieur votre père?—il se porte très-bien,
 thank God.

Dieu merci.

How do you do this morning?—I am very well, I
comment matin bien

thank you. And how does your sister do?—She is not
remercier 65 92

well ; she (has been) ill for these two months, and I
*A malade depuis * mois*

fear she will never be well again. And your brothers,
*craindre 126 * 65*

how are they?—the youngest is very well, but I do not
plus jeune mais

know how the eldest does, because we have not
savoir (ir) aîné 92 parce que

heard of him for these two months ; he was very well
*entendu parler depuis **

when he wrote us last.
quand écrire c la dernière fois

RULE 181.—*il en est de*, it is with.

✧ The impersonal *it is with*, *it will be with*, &c. is rendered in French by *il en est de*, for the present tense, *il en étoit de*, for the imperfect ; *il en fut de*, for the preterite, &c. example :

It is with you as with other men.

Il en est de vous comme des autres.

It is with the diseases of the heart as with those of the
maladie 76
 body, some are real, and some imaginary. *Il is with*
quelques-unes réel d'autres —naire
 (men of learning) as with ears of corn; they raise their heads
savant épis blé lever la tête
 while they are empty, and when they are full, they begin
tant que vide plein commencer
 to droop. *It is with your son as with other children. I do*
136 pencher
 not think *it will be with my son as it was with yours.*
croire 159 153

RULE 182.—To have, expressed by être.

✚ The auxiliary *to have* is expressed in French by the verb *être* in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs, and also of the following, *aller, arriver, décider, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, sortir, tomber, venir*, and their compounds: examples:

I rose at six o'clock. He had arrived before us.
Je me suis levé à six heures. Il étoit arrivé avant nous.

The Amazons have made themselves famous by their
Amazone f rendre 143 se 57 fameux
 courage in war. If you had risen an hour sooner this
la guerre 152 se lever plus tôt
 morning, you would have embarked with the others. If I had
s'embarquer 152
 (been awake), I would have risen. Why have you deviated
s'éveiller se lever s'écarter
 from the road which you had begun to follow?—I have
route f commencer 144 à suivre (ir)
 often repented not having followed your advice.
se repentir avis.

My father has arrived an hour sooner than you. I would
arriver plus tôt
 not have come this morning, if I had not received a letter from
venir 152
 you yesterday. You would not have fallen from your horse,
*173 tomber de * cheval*
 if you had not galloped. I have walked in the garden
152 galoper se promener
 before you were up. Why have you complained of me?
avant que 158 levé se plaindre
 I have (got a cold) this morning. He has distrusted every
s'enrhumer se défier de
 body

RULE 183.—avoir mal à.

✱ We make use of the verb *avoir mal* in speaking of any illness. The part of the body affected with some pains is put in the dative case, and, instead of the possessive pronouns, it is preceded by *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the gender and number require it ; example :

I have the head-ache. She has the tooth-ache.
J'ai mal à la tête. *Elle a mal aux dents.*

as if it were, I have a pain to the head, she has a pain to the teeth ; and so for other sentences of the same kind.

I have great pain in my side. He has sore eyes. Have
bien mal *côté* *mal yeux*
 you the stomach-ache? He has a sore foot. My lips are
estomac mal *pied* *lèvres*
 sore. She had the tooth-ache yesterday, now she has the
 149

head-ache ; to-morrow, perhaps, she will have a bad leg.
peut-être *jambe*
 When I was young, I often had the head-ache.
jeune souvent 172 149

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE upon the FRENCH IDIOMS.

Why do you not eat, if you are hungry? I am not very
manger 178 *faim* 178 *très*
 hungry, I can wait till (dinner time), but I am very thirsty,
*attendre ** *le diner* 178 *soif*
 and I will thank you for a glass of wine. It is very
prier *de me donner verre m* *vin* 179
 cold to-day. It was cold yesterday. It will be hot soon.
froid 179 179 *chaud bientôt*
 I am thirsty. He is hungry. My sister is not well, she has
 178 *soif* 178 *faim* 180 *bien*
 not been well for these three weeks, she has the head-ache
 180 *depuis ** *semaine* 183
 to-day. At what a clock did you rise this morning?
quelle heure 153 *se lever* 183

It is in vain for you to say so, I do not believe
 178 *dire le* 57 *croire (ir)*
 you. It is with my brother as with yours. How old is
 181 69 178

your son?—He is almost nineteen. And your daughter?—

près de
 She will be fifteen next Christmas. What weather is it
à 31 *noël* 179
 this morning?—It is fine weather. I hope it will be fine
 179 *espérer* 179
 weather to-morrow. Why?—Because if it be fine weather
parce que 179
 we shall go into the country, my brother and I; but if it be
à *campagne* 45 179
 bad weather, we shall stay at home.
rester *maison.*

How far is your house from the chapel? How old was
 169 *de* *à* *chapelle* *quel âge* 178
 your father when he died? How old were you when you
 65 *quand mourir* 150 178 182
 married?—I was thirty. How old are you now?—I shall
se marier 153 178 178
 be fifty next April.
 178 *au mois d'Avril prochain*

It is in vain for us to bury ourselves in obscurity;
s'enfoncer —*té*
 nothing protects us against the persecutions of malignity;
 118 *mettre* *à couvert des* *poursuite* *méchanceté*
 nothing shelters us from the darts of envy.
mettre à l'abri *traits*

What weather is it to day? I do not know; I have
 179 *savoir (ir)*
 not (been out), but I think it is very cold. If it be
 182 *sortir* *croire (ir)* 179 179
 cold, I shall not (go out), because I fear to get a cold. I
sortir *craindre de m'enrhumer*
 never drink unless I am thirsty.
boire (ir) *à moins que* 158 127 *soif*

How do your children do?—They are all very well, I
 180 180
 thank you. And your mother?—She is not well; she
remercier 65 180
 had the tooth-ache yesterday, and she told me this morning
 183 *dire* 153
 she had the head-ache. Is it cold? Are you cold? It is
 183 179 *froid* 178 179
 not cold. I am not cold. Your brother will not be well
 178 *froid* 180
 till he is twenty.
jusqu'à ce que 158 178 *vingt ans.*

FREE EXERCISES *.

1. THE TWO BEES.

On a fine morning in May two bees (set forward) in
dans matinée de mai partir
 quest of honey; the one wise and temperate, the
aller chercher sobre
 other careless and extravagant. They soon arrived at a
négligent prodigue dans
 garden enriched with aromatic herbs, the most fragrant
odoriférant
 flowers, and the most delicious fruits. They regaled them-
 selves for a time on the various dainties that were
** quelque de différent met délicat*
 spread before them; the one loading his thigh at intervals
étaler patte pl de temps
 with provisions for the hive against the distant
en temps afin de s'en nourrir pen-
 winter the other revelling with sweets, without (regard
dant l'hiver s'enivrer de
 to any thing but) his present gratification. At length they
songer qu'à satisfaction
 found a large-mouthed phial, (that hung) beneath the bough
à large ouverture suspendu une branche
 of a peach tree, filled with honey ready tempered, and exposed
** tout clarifié qui s'offroit*
 to their taste in the most alluring manner. The thought-
de attrayant
 less epicure, in spite of all his friend's remonstrances,
*épicurienne malgré **
 plunged headlong into the vessel, resolving to indulge him-
vase résolu se livrer
 self in all the pleasures of sensuality. The philosopher, on
à f
 the other hand, sipped a little with caution; but (being
en goûter
 suspicious) of danger, flew off to fruits and
soupçonner prendre son essor vers

* In the following Exercises the rules will be no more indicated, as the pupils must know them well enough to apply them by themselves.

flowers; where, by the moderation of his meals, he (*sobriété* *repas f* *se*) proved his relish for the true enjoyment of them). In *ménager le plaisir d'y trouver toujours un nouveau goût*, *vers* the evening, however, he (called upon) his friend to *aller trouver* *f* *lui* enquire whether he would return to the hive; but found *demande* *f* him surfeited in sweets, which he was as unable to leave, *gorgé de* *hors d'état de* as to enjoy. (Clogged in his wings), enfeebled in his *d'en* *les ailes collées* *les pattes affoi-* feet), and (his whole frame) totally enervated, he (was but *bles* *tout le corps* *n'avoir* just able) to bid his friend adieu, and to lament *que la force* *reconnoître avec dou-* (with his) latest breath, that, though a taste of *leur en rendant le* *soupir* *en effleurant le* pleasure might quicken the relish of life,) an *ou pouvoir rendre plus vif* *jouissance pl* *en* unrestrained indulgence) is inevitable destruction. *s'y livrant sans mesure* *on court à une*

II. RESPECT PAID BY THE LACEDÆMONIANS TO OLD AGE.

*rendre**Lacédémoniens*

It happened at Athens, during a public representation of some play exhibited in honour of the commonwealth, that *qui se donnoit au théâtre* an (old gentleman) came too late for a place suitable *vieillard* *pour trouver* to his age and quality. Many of the young gentlemen, who ** ** *gens* observed the difficulty and confusion he was in, made *embarras* *où* signals to him that they would accommodate him, if he came *signe s* *ceder une place à* where they sat: the (good man) bustled through the *être assis* *vieillard* *percer* crowd accordingly; but when he came to the seats (to *arriver* *banc* which) he was invited, the jest was to (sit close) and *où* *on se faire un jeu de* *se serrer* expose him to whole audience, when he stood, *la risée de* *assemblée tandis que être debout* (out of countenance). The frolic went round all the *tout décontenancé* *ce badinage* *passer de* *banc en*

Athenians' benches). But on those occasions, there were
banc parmi les Athéniens dans
 also particular places assigned for foreigners: when the
destiné à *
 (good man) skulked towards the boxes appointed for
vieillard étant allé se cacher bancs marqué
 the Lacedæmonians, that honest people, more virtuous than
gens pl
 polite, rose up all to a man and with the greatest
police * *jusqu'au dernier*
 respect received him among them. The Athenians, being
 suddenly touched with a sense of the Spartan virtue and
sentiment Spartiate
 their own degeneracy, gave a thunder of applause,
dépravation des applaudissemens redoublés
 and the old man cried out: "The Athenians understand
connoître
 " what is good, but the Lacedæmonians practise it."—
bien
Spectator.

III. PÆTUS AND ARRIA.

In the reign of Claudius, the Roman emperor, Arria, the
sous
 wife of Cecinna Pætus, was an illustrious pattern of magna-
exemple
 nimity and conjugal affection.

It happened that her husband and her son were both, at
 the same time, attacked with a dangerous illness. The son
 died. He was a youth endowed with every quality of
ce
 mind and person which could endear him to his parents.
corps rendre cher
 His mother's heart was (torn with all the anguish of grief;)
navré de douleur
 yet she resolved to conceal the distressing event from her
ce cruel à
 husband. She prepared and conducted his funeral so pri-
se-
 vately, that Pætus did not know of his death. When-
crètement *
 ever she came into her husband's bed-chamber, she pre-
 tended her son was better, and (as often as) he inquired after
toutes les fois que
 his health, would answer, that he had rested well, or had

eaten with appetite. When she found that she could not
 longer retain her grief; but her tears (^{sentir} were gushing out), she
 would leave the room, and having ^{s'échapper} given vent to her pas-
 sion, ^B return again with dry eyes, and a serene coun-
 sibilité elle ^{après avoir l'essor sen-} air
 tenance, as if she had left her sorrow behind her at the door
 of the chamber.

Camillus Scribonianus, the governor of Dalmatia, having
 taken up arms against Claudius, ^{—tie} Pœtus joined himself to
 his party, and was soon after taken prisoner, and brought
 to Rome. When the guards were going to put him on
 board the ship, Arria besought them (that she might be
 permitted) to go with him. ^{de conjurer} “Certainly,” said she, “you
^{permettre} cannot refuse a (man of consular dignity), (as he is), a
 “few attendants to (wait upon) him; but, if you will
^{quelque domestique servir} “take me, I alone will perform their office.” This favour,
 however, was refused; upon which she hired a small
 (fishing vessel), and boldly ventured to follow the ship.
^{barque de pêcheur} ^{se hasarder}

Returning to Rome, Arria met the wife of Scribonianus
 in the emperor's palace, who pressing her to discover all that
 she knew of the insurrection.—“What!” said she, “shall I
 regard thy advice who saw thy husband mur-
 dered in thy very arms, and yet survivest him?”
^{avoir égard à toi as vu}
^{propre qui}

Pœtus being condemned to die, Arria formed a deliberate
 resolution to share his fate, and made no secret of her in-
 tention. Thræsea, who married her daughter, tempt-
 ing to dissuade her from her purpose, among other argu-
 ments which he used, said to her: “(Would you then), (if
 “my life were to be taken from me), advise your daughter
 si l'on étoit sur le point de m'ôter la vie”

"to die with me?" "Most certainly I would," she replied,
le faire
 "if she had lived as long, and in as much harmony with
grand
 "you, as I have lived with Pœtus."

Persisting in her determination, she found means to (provide herself with) a dagger: and one day, when she observed
se procurer

(a more than usual gloom) on the countenance of Pœtus,
que
plus de tristesse qu'à l'ordinaire *visage*
 and perceived that death by the hand of the executioner
qu'elle *bour-*

appeared to him more terrible than in the field of
beau *à* *la*

glory; perhaps, too, sensible that it was chiefly for (her
honneur *sentant* *elle*
 sake) that he wished to live; she drew the dagger from her
 side, and stabbed herself before his eyes. Then instantly

plucking the weapon from her breast, she presented it to her
à
 husband, saying: "My Pœtus, it is not painful.—Pliny."
fer *cela* *douloureux*

IV. VALENTINE AND UNION.

At the siege of Namur by the allies, there was in the ranks of the company commanded by captain Pincett, in colonel Frederic Hamilton's regiment, (one Union, a corporal), and (one Valentine, a private sentinel): there happened between these two men a dispute about an affair of
un caporal, nommé Union
un simple soldat, nommé Valentine *sur-*
venir *pour*

love, when, upon some aggravations, grew to an
à raison de *provocation dégénérer en*
 irreconcilable hatred. Union, being the officer of Valentine, took all opportunities even to strike his rival, and
occasion *de*

profess the spite and revenge which moved him to it.
témoigner *porter*

The sentinel bore it without resistance; but frequently
soldat
 said he would die to (be revenged) of that tyrant.

mourroit volontiers *se venger*
 They had spent whole months in this manner, the one
 injuring the other complaining; when in the
commettant des outrages
 midst of this rage towards each other, they were com-

mauded upon the attack of the castle, where the corporal
received a ^{pour} shot in the thigh, and fell. The French

^{coup de feu à} (pressing on) and Unnion expecting to be (trampled to
^{les serrant de près} death), he called out to his enemy: "Ah, Valentine! can
^{s'attendre} ^{écrasé sous}
^{les pieds} * * "

"you leave me here?" Valentine immediately ran back,
^{aussitôt} ^{revenir sur}
and in the midst of a thick fire of the French, took

^{ses pas} ^{roulant} the corporal upon his back, and brought him through all
that danger as far as the abbey of Saltine, where a cannon-
ball took off his head: his body fell under his enemy whom
he was carrying off. Unnion immediately forgot his wound,
rose up, tearing his hair, and then threw himself upon the
bleeding carcase, crying: "Ah, Valentine! was it for me,
^{sanglant cadavre}

"who have so barbarously used thee, that thou hast died?
"I will not (live after) thee." (He was not by any means

^{vouloir} ^{survivre} ^{il n'y eut pas moyen de}
to be forced) from the body, but (was removed with
^{l'arracher} ^{cadavre} ^{on l'enleva le tenant}

it bleeding) in his arms, and attended with tears by
^{tout sanglant} ^{accompagné des} ^{de}
all their comrades who knew their enmity. (When he

was) brought to a tent, his wounds were dressed by
^{ayant été} ^{dans} ^{panser}

force; but the next day, still calling upon Valentine,
^{malgré lui}

and lamenting his cruelties to him, he died in the pangs
^{déplorer} ^{envers} ^{tourment}
of remorse.—Tatler.

V. MULY MOLUC.

When Don Sebastian, king of Portugal, (had invaded) the
^{—tien} ¹⁵⁰
territories of Muly Moluc, emperor of Morocco, in order
^{état} ^{Maroc}

to dethrone him, and set his crown upon the head of his
nephew, Moluc (was wearing away with) a distemper which
^{se mourir de}
he himself knew was incurable. However, he prepared (for
^{être}

the reception of) so formidable an enemy. He was indeed
à recevoir

so far spent with his sickness, that he did not expect to
** épuisé par s'attendre*

live out the whole day; but knowing the fatal conse-
*passer * journée*

quences that would happen to his children and his people,
résulter pour

in case he should die before he put an end to that war, he

commanded his principal officers, that if he died during
*à **

the engagement, (they should conceal) his death from his
combat de cacher

army, and (that they should ride up) to the litter in which
de se rendre

his corpse was carried, under pretence of receiving orders
corps E

from him as usual. Before the battle begun, he was
à l'ordinaire

carried through all the ranks of his army in an open lit-
dans découvert

ter, as (they stood drawn up in array), encour-
pendant que les troupes étoient rangées en bataille

aging them to fight valiantly in defence of their reli-
pour la

gion and country. Finding afterwards the battle to go
voir

against him, though he was very near his last agonies, he
** tourner*

threw himself out of his litter, rallied his army, and led
** sing.*

them on to the charge, which afterwards ended in a com-
** ce qui par*

plete victory on the side of the Moors. He had no sooner
de Maure

brought his men to the engagement, but finding himself
troupes combat que

utterly spent, he was again replaced in his litter, where
mettre

laying his finger on his mouth, to enjoin secrecy to his
officers, who stood about him, he died a few moments after

in that posture.—Spectator.

VI. DIONYSIUS THE TYRANT.

Dionysius the tyrant of Sicily, shewed how far he was
Denis

from being happy, even whilst he had abounded in riches,
avoit en abondance des

and all the pleasures which riches can procure. Damocles, one of his flatterers, was complimenting him upon his power, his treasures, and the magnificence (of his royal state), and *qui l'entouroit* affirming, that no monarch ever was greater or happier than *assuroit*

he. (Have you a mind), Damocles, says the king, to taste *voulez-vous*

this happiness, and know by experience what my enjoyments are, of which you have so high an idea. Damocles gladly accepted the offer: upon which the king ordered, that a royal banquet should be prepared, and a gilded couch

placed for him, covered with rich embroidery, and side-boards *festin* 98 *qu'on* *lit*

152 loaded with gold and silver plate of immense value. Pages *buffet*

of extraordinary beauty were ordered to (wait on) him at *vaisselle*

table, and to obey his commands with the greatest readiness, *curent ordre* *servir*

and the most profound submission. Neither ointments, *promptitude*

chaplets of flowers, nor rich perfumes were wanting. The *guirlande* *épargné*

table was loaded with the most exquisite delicacies of every kind. Damocles fancied himself amongst the gods. In the *croire*

midst of all this happiness, he sees, (let down) from the roof *descendre* *plafond*

over his head, a glittering sword hung by a single hair. The *suspendu à*

sight of destruction thus threatening him, soon (put a stop to) *mort* *interrompre*

his joy and revelling. The pomp of his attendance, and the *plaisir pl* *serviteur pl*

glitter of the carved plate, gave him no longer any pleasure. *brillant ciselé*

He dreads to (stretch forth) his hand to the table. He throws *craindre* *porter*

off the chaplet of roses. He hastens to (remove from) his *quitter*

dangerous situation, and at last begs the king to restore him to his former humble condition, (having no desire) to

enjoy *précédent* 31 30 *ne désirant pas*

(any longer) such a dreadful kind of happiness. *plus long-temps*

VII. DAMON AND PYTHIAS.

Damon and Pythias (of the Pythagorean sect in philosophy)
philosophes de la secte de Pythagore
 lived (in the) time of Dionysius, the tyrant of Sicily. Their
B du Denis
 mutual friendship was so strong, that they were ready to die
 for one another. One of the two (for it is not known which)
 being condemned to death by the tyrant, obtained leave to go
 into his own country, to settle his affairs, on condition that
 * * * * *
 the other should consent to be imprisoned in his stead, and
 put to death for him, if he did not return before the day of
 execution. The attention of (every one), and especially of
 * * * * *
chacun
 the tyrant himself, (was excited to the highest pitch); as
étoit dans la plus grande attente *
 every body was curious to see what should be the event of so
étant * * * * *
issue
 strange an affair. When the time was almost elapsed, and
 * * * * *
B écoulé
 he who was gone did not appear, the rashness of the other,
parti * * * * *
B
 whose sanguine friendship (had put him upon running)
à qui sa vive * * * * *
avoit fait courir
 (so seemingly desperate a hazard), was univereally blamed.
un danger en apparence si inévitable 98
 But he still declared that he had not (the least shadow of)
persistoit à soutenir * * * * *
le plus léger
 doubt (in his mind) of his friend's fidelity. The event showed
 * * * * *
 how well he knew him. He came in due time, and (sur-
que * * * * *
à * * * * *
se
 rendered himself) to that fate which he had no reason to
soumettre * * * * *
une destinée * * * * *
sujet
 think he should escape, and which he did not wish to
pût éviter * * * * *
à laquelle
 escape by leaving his friend to suffer it in his place. Such
échapper * * * * *
subir
 fidelity softened even the savage heart of Dionysius himself.
 * * * * *
farouche
 He pardoned the condemned. He gave the two
à celui qui avoit été condamné * * * * *
remit
 friends to one another; and (begged that they
dans les bras l'un de l'autre * * * * *
les pria de l'admettre
 would take himself in for a third.)
en tiers dans leur amitié

VIII. DESTRUCTION OF THE ALEXANDRIAN LIBRARY.

d'Alexandrie

When Alexandria was taken by the Mahometans, Amrus,
 —drief —
 their commander, found there Philoponus, whose conversation
chef
 highly pleased him, as Amrus (was a lover of) letters, and
beaucoup *aimer*
 Philoponus was a learned man. On a certain day Philoponus
 *
 said to him: "You have visited all the repositories or public
dépôt
 " warehouses in Alexandria, and you have sealed up
de *mettre le scellé sur*
 " (things of every sort) that (are found) there. As to those
les différens objets *se trouver*
 " things that may be useful to you, I presume to say nothing;
prétendre
 " but as to things of no service to you, some of them
qui ne vous sont d'aucun usage * *
 " may (be more suitable to me)." Amrus said to him:
E *me convenir davantage*
 " And what is it you want?" "The philosophical books,"
vouloir E
 replied he, "preserved in the royal libraries." "This," said
déposés
 Amrus, "is a request upon which I cannot decide. You de-
demande
 " sire a thing where I can issue no orders, till I have leave
sur laquelle *donner*
 " from Omar, the commander of the faithful." Letters were
 * *
 accordingly written to Omar informing him of what
on écrivit *pour —mer*
 Philoponus had said; and (an answer was returned by Omar
Omar répondit
 to the following purpose:) "As to the books of which you
en ces termes
 " have made mention, if (there be contained in them what)
ce qu'ils contiennent
 " accords with the book of God (meaning the Alcoran)
c'est-à dire
 " there is without them, in the book of God, all that is suf-
on trouve
 " ficient. But if there is any thing in them repugnant to
 * * *de contraire*
 " that book, we (in no respect) want them. Order them there-
nullement *faites*

“fore to be all destroyed.” Amrus upon this
** * détruire d’après cette réponse*
 ordered (them to be dispersed) through the baths of Alex-
qu’on les distribuât dans
 andria, and to be there burnt (in making the baths warm).
qu’on les y brûlât pour chauffer les bains
 After this manner, in the space of six months, they were all
de
 consumed. Thus ended this noble library; and thus began,
superbe
 if it had not began sooner, the age of barbary and ignorance.
pl

IX. THE ADVANTAGES OF A GOOD EDUCATION.

I consider a human soul without education like marble in
l’âme de l’homme
 the quarry, which shews none of its inherent beauties,
 until the skill of the polisher fetches out the colours,
talent marbrier en fasse sortir en
 makes the surface ² shine ¹, and discovers every (ornamental
nuance
 cloud), spot, and vein, (that runs through the body of it).
dont il est parsemé
 Education ², (after the same manner) ¹, when it works upon a
de même opérer
 noble mind, (draws out to view) every latent virtue and per-
âme mettre au jour
 fection, which, without such helps, are never able (to make
son s
 their appearance.)
paraître

If my reader will (give me leave) to change so soon the
vouloir me permettre de
 allusion upon him, I shall (make use) of the same instance,
** * se servir comparaison*
 to illustrate the force of education, which Aristotle has
faire sentir
 brought to explain his doctrine of substantial forms, when he
employer
 tells us that a statue lies hid in a block of marble, and the
être que
 art of the statuary only clears away the superfluous mat-
ne fait qu’enlever
 ter, and removes the rubbish. The figure is in the stone,
écarter immondices pl
 and the sculptor only finds it. What sculpture is to a block of
n’a qu’à la trouver

marble, education is to a human soul. The philosopher, the saint, or the hero; the wise, the good, or the great
homme de bien
 man; very often lie hid, and concealed in a plebeian, which a
être caché enfoui et
 proper education might have disinterred, and have brought
*le * le mettre*
 to light. I am therefore much delighted with reading
au jour prendre beaucoup de plaisir à
 the accounts of savage nations; and with contemplating those
histoire s
 virtues which are wild and uncultivated; to see courage
grossier
 exerting itself in fierceness, resolution in obstinacy, wisdom in
se manifester opiniâtreté
 cunning, patience in sullenness and despair.
ruse f chagrin

Men's passions operate variously, and appear in different kinds of actions, according as they are more or less rectified and swayed by reason. When one hears of negroes, who
gouverner
 upon the death of their masters, or upon changing their
à lorsqu'ils changent de
 service, hang themselves upon the next tree, as it fre-
condition à premier
 quently happens in our American plantations, who can forbear
s'empêcher
 admiring their fidelity, though it expresses itself in so
de se manifester
 dreadful a manner? What might not that savage
à quoi ne s'élèveroit pas
 greatness of soul, which appears in these poor wretches on
dans
 many occasions, (be raised to), were it rightly cultivated?
** si bien*
 And what colour of excuse can there be for the contempt
** **
 with which we treat this part of our species; (that we should
s pour ne point
 not) put them upon the common foot of humanity; (that
ranger dans classe des autres hommes pour
 we should only set) an insignificant fine upon (the man)
ne prononcer que amende contre celui
 who murders them; nay, (that we should, as much as in us
et même pour leur enlever, autant qu'il est
 lies, cut them off from) the prospects of happiness in another
en nous perspective s
 world, as well as in this, and denying them that which we

(look upon) as the proper means for attaining it.
considérer *à parvenir y*

It is therefore an unspeakable blessing to be born in those
ineffable bonheur
 parts of the world where wisdom and knowledge flourish;
s science pl
 though it must be confessed there are, even in these parts,
nos contrées
 several poor uninstructed persons, who are but little above
*ignorant * bien peu*
 those nations of which I (have been here) speaking; as those
viens de
 who have had the advantages of a more liberal education, rise
 above one another by several different degrees of perfection.
 For, to return to our statue in the block of marble, we see it
que
 sometimes only began to be chipped, sometimes rough-
on n'a que commencé à le dégrossir on l'a
 hewn, and but just sketched into a human figure; sometimes
ébauché on y a seulement esquissé
 we see the man appearing distinctly in all his limbs and
 features; sometimes we find the figure wrought up to
** avec*
 great elegance; but we seldom meet with any to which
beaucoup de. une statue
 the hand of a Phidias or a Praxiteles could not give several
 nice touches and finishings).—*Spectator.*
touches propres à l'embellir et à la rendre parfaite

X. DIGNITY OF HUMAN NATURE.

In forming our notions of human nature, we are
les notions que nous nous formons
 very apt to make comparison betwixt men and animals,
porté une
 which are the only creatures endowed with thought, that fall
idées
 under our senses. Certainly this comparison is very favour-
 able to mankind; on the one hand, we see a creature,
espèce humaine
 whose thoughts are not limited by any narrow bounds, either
*idée borne **
 of place or time; who carries his researches into the
lieu jusque dans
 most distant regions of this globe, and beyond this globe, to
jusqu'à

he planets and heavenly bodies; looks back to consider the
 first origin of the human race; ^{qui} casts his eyes forward to
 see the influence of his actions upon posterity, and the judg-
 ments which will be formed of his character a thousand
 years hence: a creature who traces ^{dans} causes
 and effects to great lengths ^{examine l'enchaînement des} and intricacy,
 extracts general principles from particular appearances,
^{qui tirer} improves upon his discoveries, corrects his mistakes, and
 makes his very errors profitable. On the other hand, we
 (are presented) with a creature the very reverse of this;
^{mettre: même 31 à profit} ^{trouver} ^{qui est tout l'opposé}
 lost in its observations and reasonings to a few sensible
 objects which surround it, without curiosity, without a fore-
 sight, blindly conducted by instinct, and arriving in a very
 short time at its utmost perfection, beyond which it is never
 able to advance ^{de} a single step. What a difference is there
 betwixt these creatures, and how exalted a notion must we
 entertain of the former, in comparison of the latter!—Hume's
 Essays.

 XL. DETACHED SENTENCES.

There is an heroic innocence, as well as an heroic courage.

It is wiser to prevent a quarrel beforehand, than to revenge it afterwards.

No revenge is more heroic, than that which torments envy by doing good.

A contented mind, and a good conscience, will make a man happy in all conditions. He knows not how to fear, who dares to die.

There is but one way of fortifying the soul against all gloomy presages and terrors of the mind; and that is, by

securing to ourselves the friendship and protection of that Being, who disposes of events, and governs futurity.

Without a friend the world is but a wilderness.

A man may have a thousand intimate acquaintances, and not a friend among them. If you have one friend, think yourself happy.

Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them.

Ingratitude is a crime so shameful, that the man was never yet found who would acknowledge himself guilty of it.

By others faults wise men correct their own.

The prodigal robs his heir, the miser robs himself.

Though a man may become learned by another's learning, he can never be wise but by his own wisdom.

Men are sometimes accused of pride, merely because their accusers would be proud themselves if they were in their place.

The difference there is betwixt honour and honesty seems to be chiefly in the motive. The honest man does that from duty which the man of honour does for the sake of character.

A man should never be ashamed to own he has been in the wrong; which is but saying in other words, that he is wiser to-day than he was yesterday.

Complaisance renders a superior amiable, an equal agreeable, and an inferior acceptable.

Excess of ceremony shews want of breeding. That civility is the best which excludes all superfluous formality.

Truth is born with us, and we must do violence to nature, to shake off our veracity.

There cannot be a greater treachery, than first to raise a confidence and then deceive it.

It is as great a point of wisdom to hide ignorance, as to discover knowledge.

Custom is the plague of wise men, and the idol of fools.

As to be perfectly just is an attribute of the divine nature, to be so to the utmost of our abilities, is the glory of men.

Anger may glance into the breast of a wise man, but rests only in the bosom of a fool.

To err is human; to forgive, divine.

We should take a prudent care for the future, but so as to enjoy the present. It is no part of wisdom, to be miserable to-day, because we may happen to be so to-morrow.

He that is truly polite knows how to contradict with respect, and to please without adulation; and is equally remote from an insipid complaisance, and a low familiarity.

FINIS.

LONDON:

Printed by A. & R. Spottiswoode,
New-Street-Square.